IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2
Version 2 Release 2
DATABASE 2 Application Specification Guide

	IMS Application Development
	Facility II
	Version 2 Release 2
	DATABASE 2 Application Specification Guide
Publication Number SH20-6603-01	File Number S/370/4300-32
	Program Number
	Program Number 5665-348

#### Second Edition (June 1986)

This edition applies to Version 2, Release 2 of the program product IMS Application Development Facility II (5665-348), and to all subsequent releases and modifications unless otherwise indicated in new editions or Technical Newsletters.

Information in this publication is subject to change. Changes will be published in new editions or technical newsletters. Before using this publication, consult either your IBM System/370 and 4300 Processors Bibliography (GC20-0001) or IBM System/370 and 4300 Processors Bibliography of Industry Systems Systems and Application Programs (GC20-0370) to learn which editions and technical newsletters are current and applicable.

References in this publication to IBM products, programs, or services do not imply that IBM intends to make these available outside the United States. Any reference to an IBM program product in this document is not intended to state or imply that only IBM's program products may be used. Any functionally equivalent program products may be used instead.

Requests for copies of IBM publications should be made to your IBM representative or to the IBM branch office serving your locality.

A form for readers' comments has been provided at the back of this publication. If this form has been removed, address comments to:

IBM Corporation Information Processing Department 6DD 220 Las Colinas Blvd. Irving, Texas 75039-5513

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation whatever. You may, of course, continue to use the information you supply.

(c) Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1985, 1986

#### **PREFACE**

This publication is a guide to developing IMSADF II applications that access IBM DATABASE 2 (DB2) data bases.

This publication consists of five chapters and six appendixes.

- Chapter 1, "An Overview of Application Design" gives an overview of application design. It describes the DB2 Relational Data Base support, the IMSADF II Application Design and Performance considerations.
- Chapter 2, "User Specification" describes how to define the environment and functions required by an IMSADF II transactions accessing DB2 data.
- Chapter 3, "RGLGEN Utility" describes how to extract Rules Generator source from the DB2 catalog.
- Chapter 4, "Execution Processing" describes the IMSADF II functions that are available to IMSADF II DB2 transactions at execution.
- Chapter 5, "Installation" describes one optional IMSADF II installation step, and the IMSADF II DB2 sample problem.
- The appendixes include:
  - Appendix A, "Sample Rules Generator Source and Output"
  - Appendix B, "Specification Example"
  - Appendix C, "Sample Problem"
  - Appendix D, "BTS in an IMS/VS DB2 Environment"
  - Appendix E, "IMSADF II Trace Facility"
  - Appendix F, "RGLGEN Utility Link-edit Plan"

#### **RELATED PUBLICATIONS**

#### IMSADF II PUBLICATIONS

- IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 General Information, GH20-6591.
- IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 User Reference, SH20-6592.
- IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 Installation Guide, SH20-6593.
- IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 Application Development Reference, SH20-6594.
- IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 Application Development Guide, SH20-6595.
- IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 Rules Documentation User's Guide, SH20-6596.
- IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 Data Dictionary Extension User's Guide, SH20-6597.
- IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 Master Index, SH20-6599.
- IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 Introduction to Using the Interactive ADF, SH20-6601.
- IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 Interactive ADF Administration Guide, SH20-6602.
- IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 DATABASE 2 Application Specification Guide, SH20-6603.
- IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 Diagnosis Guide, LY20-6401.

#### OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- IBM DATABASE 2 Reference, SC26-4078
- IBM DATABASE 2 Application Programming Guide for IMS/VS Version 1 Users, SC26-4079
- IBM DATABASE 2 Application Programming Guide for CICS/OS/VS Users, SC26-4080
- IBM DATABASE 2 Application Programming Guide for TSO Users, SC26-4081
- IBM DATABASE 2 System Planning and Administration Guide, SC26-4085
- IBM DATABASE 2 Messages and Codes, SC26-4113
- IMS/VS BTS Program Reference and Operations Manual, SH20-5523

#### CONTENTS

```
Chapter 1. An Overview of Application Design 1-1
DB2 Relational Data Base Support 1-1
   Description 1-1
IMSADF II Application Design Considerations 1-1
   TABLE/VIEW 1-1
   SQL Language Usage
                                 1-2
   DB2 Scheduling 1-3
   DB2 Functions Supported Indirectly 1-3
DB2 Services Not Supported Using Standard IMSADF II Functions 1-3
Standard IMSADF II Functions Not Available for DB2 Tables 1-4
Chapter 2. User Specification 2-1 Rules Generator 2-1
   SYSTEM Statement 2-1
   TABLE (SEGMENT) Statement 2-1
COLUMN (FIELD) Statement 2-4
   GENERATE Statement 2-7
      Table Layout Rule 2-7
      Table Handler Rule 2-8
SQLCALL Functions 2-10
      CSELECT - CURSOR SELECT for Single Row Inquiry 2-11
INSERT - INSERT of a Single Row 2-12
CUPDATE - CURSOR UPDATE for Single Row 2-12
CDELETE - CURSOR DELETE for Single Row 2-13
      SELECT - SELECT of a Single Row 2-14
UPDATE - UPDATE of a Single Row 2-15
DELETE - DELETE of a Single Row 2-15
      KSELECT - SELECT for Secondary Key Selection Browse 2-16 USER SQL Statements 2-18
      Summary for Table Handler Rule 2-21
Summary of Rules Generator Operands for the Table Handler Rule 2-22
      Other GENERATE Statement Operands 2-23
Input Transaction Rules 2-23
Preload, Composite and Driver Link-Edits 2-24
Using the Rules Generator Execution Procedure 2-24
High Level Audit Language 2-26
   DB2 Related Audit Operations 2-26
CONCAT 2-26
      SUBSTR 2-27
IMMEDIATE SQL Call 2-27
      Interrogate SQL SQLCODE and SQLWARN(0-7) 2-28
USER SQL - Key Selection Browse 2-30
DB2 Column Null and Truncation (Test and Set) 2-32 Message Generation 2-33
EXIT Functions 2-34
SQLHNDLR Call 2-34
SQLHNDLR Call Format 2-35
SQLHNDLR Call Parameters
Exit Parameter Lists 2-37
Rules Documentation 2-37
DR2 Specifications 2-38
   BIND Process 2-38
IMSADF II - DB2 Naming Conventions 2-40
Chapter 3. RGLGEN Utility 3-1
Description 3-1
Dependencies
SYSIBM.SYSCOLUMNS Table 3-2
SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES Table 3
SYSIBM.SYSKEYS Table 3-3
SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table 3-4
   IMSADF II Administrator Control 3-5
Program Preparation 3-6
DB2 and IMSADF II Installation 3-6
   Install SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table 3-6
   BIND Process 3-7
TSO Program Parameters 3-7
Input 3-9
```

Parameters 3-10 Output 3-11 Messages 3-11 Return Codes 3-12 Abnormal Termination Codes 3-12 ERROR, WARNING, and INFORMATIONAL Messages 3-12 Message Parameters 3-12 Message Text 3-13 Chapter 4. Execution Processing 4-1 Signon and Menus 4-1 Key Selection 4-1 Screen Handling 4-4 Auditor 4-5 Message Handling 4-6 Error and Warning ... Error Processing 4-6 Error and Warning Messages 4-6 Data Base Handling CUPDATE - CURSOR UPDATE for single row 4-8
CDELETE - CURSOR DELETE for Single Row 4-8
INSERT - INSERT of a Single row 4-9 Rule and SPA Workarea Handling 4-10 Exit Processing 4-10 Chapter 5. Installation 5-1 Sample Problem 5-1
DB2 Application Plan Restriction 5-2 Appendix A. Sample Rules Generator Source and Output A-1 Rules Generator Source Statements A-1 Table Handler Generated Assembler Source Statements A-4 Appendix B. Specification Example B-1 DB2 Employee Table Definition B-1 Rules Generator Input B-2 Transaction Help Facility B-8 High Level Audit Language B-9 EM and EX Transactions B-9 ES Transaction B-10 The Bind Process B-11 Appendix C. Sample Problem C-1 Appendix D. BTS in an IMS/VS - DB2 Environment D-1 BTS Input Commands D-1 BTS Output D-2 Appendix E. IMSADF II Trace Facility E-1 Appendix F. RGLGEN Utility Link-edit Plan F-1

Index X-1

#### **FIGURES**

```
2-6
            DATA TYPES
            CURSOR SELECT, Standard IMSADF II Function INSERT, Standard IMSADF II Function 2-12 CURSOR UPDATE, Standard IMSADF II Function CURSOR DELETE, Standard IMSADF II Function
 2-2.
 2-3.
 2-4.
  2-5.
           SELECT, Non-Standard IMSADF II Function 2-14
UPDATE, Non-Standard IMSADF II Function 2-15
DELETE, Non-Standard IMSADF II Function 2-15
 2-6.
 2-7.
2-8.
            KSELECT, Secondary Key Selection Browse Function 2-17 USER SQL Statement Formats 2-21
 2-9.
2-10.
2-11.
            Rules Generator Operands Applicable to Table Handler Rule 2-22
DB?I MENU Panel 2-38
2-12.
            DB2T BIND/REBIND/FREE MENU Panel 2-39 BIND Panel 2-39
2-13.
2-14.
            SYSIBM. SYSCOLUMNS TABLE
 3-1.
            SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES TABLE 3-3
SYSIBM.SYSKEYS TABLE 3-3
SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID TABLE 3-4
 3-2.
  3-3.
  3-4.
 3-5.
            DB2I BIND Panel, RGLGEN Utility 3-7
            Rules Source from DB2 Catalog Panel 3-9 SQLCODE and IMSADF II ACTION 4-7
  3-6.
 4-1.
            IMSADF II SQL Error Message (SQLCODE < 0) 4-7
 4-2.
            Rules Source from DB2 Catalog Panel B-2
DB2I Bind Panel Input B-11
 B-1.
 B-2.
  C-1.
            Sign-on Screen C-1
 C-2.
C-3.
            Primary Key Selection, Transaction EM C-2
Primary Key Selection, Transaction EM, HELP REQUEST C-2
  C-4.
            HELP Screen, Transaction EM C-3
Primary Key Selection, Transaction EM C-3
  C-5.
            Secondary Key Selection, Transaction EM BY WORKDEPT C-4
Secondary Key Selection, Transaction EM BY WORKDEPT C-4
Primary Key Selection, Transaction EM C-5
  C-6.
  Č-7.
  C-8.
  C-9.
             Secondary Key Selection, Transaction EM BY EMPNO
             Transaction Display Screen, Transaction EM
                                                                                             C-6
C-10.
            Transaction Display Screen, Transaction EM
Transaction Display Screen, Transaction ES
Transaction Display Screen, Transaction ES
C-11.
                                                                                              C-6
C-12.
                                                                                              C-7
Č-13.
                                                                                              Č-7
            Transaction Display Screen, Transaction ES by DEPT A00 C-8
Transaction Display Screen, Transaction ES by DEPT A00 C-8
Transaction Display Screen, Transaction ES by JOBCODE 55 C-9
Transaction Display Screen, Transaction ES by JOBCODE 55 C-9
Transaction Display Screen, Transaction ES by EDUCLVL 16 C-1
C-14.
C-15.
C-16.
C-17.
C-18.
            Sample BTSIN Data for an IMSADF II - DB2 Transaction D-1 BTS SQL Trace D-2
 D-1.
 D-2.
```

#### CHAPTER 1. AN OVERVIEW OF APPLICATION DESIGN

#### DB2 RELATIONAL DATA BASE SUPPORT

#### DESCRIPTION

The IMS Application Development Facility II supports IBM's relational data base management system DATABASE 2 (DB2). A DB2 table/view is defined to the IMSADF II Rules Generator by TABLE and COLUMN statements (or alternatively, by SEGMENT and FIELD statements.) These statements can be user specified or can be produced using the IMSADF II RGLGEN Utility. The Rules Generator builds a Table Layout Rule to define the table/view layout and a Table Handler Rule to define SQL access. The Table Layout Rule defines the table layout to the execution time transaction drivers. The Table Handler Rule is a generated Assembler program that issues static SQL statements for the IMSADF II transaction. The SQL WHERE clauses include standard generated predicates (that is, columns marked as KEY=YES, connected with the = relational operator) and user-supplied predicates. Host variables, representing column I/O areas for SELECT, UPDATE, DELETE, or INSERT calls are defined as DSECTs on the IMSADF II SPA workarea. The Table Handler program is created by the Rules Generator, which dynamically invokes the DB2 pre-compiler, assembler and linkage editor.

Standard IMSADF II functions process one row from a DB2 table per transaction iteration. Each DB2 row processed should be defined with unique column values to satisfy IMSADF II key requirements. Multiple DB2 tables can be processed simultaneously. Processing multiple rows from a DB2 table in a single iteration of an IMSADF II transaction requires additional audit or special processing routine logic.

At execution, an IMSADF II transaction driver - conversational, nonconversational, or batch (BMP) - issues SQL calls to access and update a Table/View, as appropriate. Applications can be defined, with additional SQL WHERE clauses, that are still controlled by the IMSADF II transaction driver, but are triggered with application logic through an Audit operation or with a SQLHNDLR Call in an Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine. Additionally, an Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine can issue native SQL calls (static or dynamic).

#### IMSADF II APPLICATION DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

#### TABLE/VIEW

- A Table/View is defined to the IMSADF II Rules Generator via TABLE and COLUMN statements. IMSADF II does not distinguish between a Table or a View. This is analogous to DL/I support, in that IMSADF II does not distinguish between logical and physical data bases.
  - When a SQL statement is defined to IMSADF II in a Table Handler Rule, <u>all</u> DB2 Columns defined in the corresponding Table Layout Rule are named and SELECTed for that Table/View. In the UPDATE and INSERT statements, the SET and VALUES clauses include all columns specifying the Rules Generator operands, SQLUPD=YES and SQLISRT=YES.
- The Rules Generator accepts TABLE and COLUMN names of up to 50 characters, including SQL built-in functions and arithmetic expressions. IMSADF II uses these names to communicate with DB2. IMSADF II Table and Column IDs must be associated with every DB2 name defined. This is the same technique used to relate DL/I segment and field names to the IMSADF II. The dual naming convention is required by IMSADF II for inter-rule relationships.
- All DB2 data types are supported by IMSADF II. However, DB2 data types VARCHAR and FLOAT have limited support.

VARCHAR IMSADF II support is limited to a 253-byte varying character string. (DB2 allows 32K.)

A data field TYPE=VARCHAR is modified when:

Entered from a screen or batch input.

IMSADF II recalculates the current data length, based on the last non-blank character.

Modified through audits, or modified from an exit with the MAPPER function.

The length of the source field(s) is used to calculate the current length of a target VARCHAR field. Trailing blanks are significant. IMSADF II does NOT recalculate the current data length based on the last non-blank character.

Exits that modify a field with TYPE=VARCHAR within their own data area must also set the current data length attribute unless the field is mapped to the SPA Table I/O area with the MAPPER function. Recalculation of the current data length does not occur when a changed VARCHAR field is moved to the SPA Table I/O area with the COPYSEG function.

When defining VARCHAR Columns to the Rules Generator, only specify the maximum length of the data area. The Rules Generator reserves two additional bytes for the halfword length attribute.

FLOAT

Support is limited to display and data entry. Data conversions of FLOAT to display and display to FLOAT are handled automatically. Data manipulation functions are not provided, except for float to float, float to alphanumeric, and alphanumeric to float. Arithmetic operations in the Auditor and other data conversions are not supported.

Data types FLOAT and VARCHAR are also available to all other IMSADF II segment types: DL/I data base, pseudo, map, and out.

- IMSADF II supports DB2 indicator variables by means of an indicator structure. The purpose of the indicator variable is to allow for the null value. When none of the DB2 Columns are eligible for null processing, the indicator structure is omitted from the Table I/O area. When one or more DB2 Columns are eligible for null processing, (SQLNULL=YES), an indicator structure containing an indicator variable for every Column is defined at the end of the Table I/O area.
- DB2 Tables are not supported in IMSADF II Text Utility transactions.

#### SQL LANGUAGE USAGE

- For standard access to DB2 tables (that is, no procedural coding), unique column values (or keys) should be specified. The user should CREATE INDEX with the UNIQUE attribute for Tables that are accessed using standard IMSADF II functions, (that is, key selection browse, automatic data base update).
- The standard key selection browse function has an ORDER BY clause associated with the SQL CURSOR SELECT statement. This ensures that the rows displayed on the key selection browse screen are in an ordered sequence. Even though a UNIQUE INDEX is defined for a TABLE, the DB2 BIND process may choose to ignore it and define a search strategy using a TABLE scan technique. This causes the rows to be displayed in an arbitrary order. Specifying an ORDER BY clause may influence DB2 to use the INDEX to avoid the overhead of the sort associated with using an ORDER BY clause.

- When DB2 utilizes the ORDER BY clause, a sort may be performed for the entire set of rows satisfying the WHERE clause at CURSOR OPEN. Terminal I/O causes the cursor to be closed. Therefore, if the terminal operator requests the next screen of key selection, the repositioning process will require the re-execution of the SQL call and another sort of the selected set of rows. Use of the key selection browse function with DB2 tables should be reviewed carefully, due to the potential adverse impact on performance.
- Arithmetic expressions are not allowed in the SET and VALUES clauses of the UPDATE and INSERT calls. These functions can be accomplished by current operations in the Audit Language.
- Static SQL is supported through the generation of a Table Handler Rule. Dynamic SQL is not supported in the Table Handler Rule, though an Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine may issue native SQL calls to PREPARE, DESCRIBE, and EXECUTE a dynamic SQL request and map the data back to the SPA workarea for display.

#### DB2 SCHEDULING

Since one Application Plan (same name as PSB and mini-driver name) may include many Table Handler Rules with intent to UPDATE, it is recommended that page locking be used. Additionally, the BIND input for the Application Plan should specify cursor stability. This allows more optimal DB2 processing and reduces lock conflicts between applications.

Table locking and access path are determined by DB2 during the BIND process. Even if PAGE locks are specified, the DB2 BIND may choose a TABLE SPACE lock.

One IMS/VS PSB can cluster many IMSADF II transactions. This implies that many IMSADF II transactions can also be defined by one DB2 Application Plan. However, large DB2 Application Plans are not as efficient as smaller ones.

The <u>IBM DATABASE 2 System Planning and Administration Guide</u> contains additional information on the DB2 BIND and Application Plan process and the Concurrency Control Mechanisms (Locking).

#### DB2 FUNCTIONS SUPPORTED INDIRECTLY

The following DB2 functions are supported indirectly via the DB2 View mechanism:

- Joins of Tables where multiple Table/View name combinations exceed the 50 character IMSADF II Rules Generator SQLNAME operand limit.
- DB2 Column name expressions that exceed the 50 character IMSADF II Rules Generator SQLNAME operand limit.
  - SQL built-in functions (such as DISTINCT, COUNT)
  - Arithmetic expressions
  - Multiple DB2 Column names

#### DB2 SERVICES NOT SUPPORTED USING STANDARD IMSADF II FUNCTIONS

The following DB2 categories of SQL statements are not supported using standard IMSADF II functions. They can be invoked by defining native SQL statements in an Audit Exit or a Special Processing Routine. The last three can also be implemented with IMSADF II-defined USER SQL statements.

- SQL Data Definition Statements
- Dynamic SQL Statements
- SQL Control Statements (that is, LOCK)
- SQL Authorization Statements

- SQL Statements with UNION
- SQL clauses GROUP BY and HAVING
- SQL subselects

### STANDARD IMSADF II FUNCTIONS NOT AVAILABLE FOR DB2 TABLES

- DB2 Tables are not supported in Text Utility transactions.
- Standard TWIN processing function (DL/I only)
- 'N' OPTION
- DL/I EXIT

#### CHAPTER 2. USER SPECIFICATION

Note: Refer to the following appendixes while reading this chapter:

- Appendix A, "Sample Rules Generator Source and Output," for Rules Generator input and output
- Appendix B, "Specification Example," for a complete specification example
- Appendix C, "Sample Problem," for Screen flow for two sample DB2 transactions

#### RULES GENERATOR

Four Rules Generator statements are used to describe a DB2 application to IMSADF II:

SYSTEM Specifies setup information

TABLE Defines Table/View information, (synonym - SEGMENT)

COLUMN Defines Table/View layout, (synonym - FIELD)

GENERATE Requests the application rule and screen generations

#### SYSTEM STATEMENT

The SYSTEM statement defines the major application system identification and setup information. The SYSTEM statement must precede any table/view or segment definitions. See the <a href="IMS Application Development Facility II">IMS Application Development Facility II</a> Version 2 Release 2 Application Development Reference for a description of the SYSTEM statement and its operands. The only SYSTEM operand not applicable to applications processing DB2 Tables/Views is PCBNO, which is a DL/I parameter.

#### TABLE (SEGMENT) STATEMENT

The TABLE (synonym SEGMENT) statement describes a DB2 Table/View. See the IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 Application Development Reference for a description of the SEGMENT statement and its operands.

The following TABLE statement operands are used exclusively to define DB2 Tables to IMSADF II.

#### TYPE=TBL

The value TBL indicates a DB2 Table/View is being defined. The TBL value indicates to the IMSADF II transaction drivers that data base I/O is performed through SQL functions in the associated Table Handler Rule. Those SQL functions include SELECT, UPDATE, INSERT, DELETE, or user supplied functions.

If TABLE is used to identify the TABLE statement (rather than SEGMENT), the default value for TYPE is TBL.

#### SQLDIST=NO YES

SQLDIST=YES indicates that the SQL DISTINCT keyword is used on all SELECT SQL statements defined in the Table Handler Rule. Both standard and user-specified SQL SELECT statements are defined with the DISTINCT keyword.

SQLIND=NO

SQLIND=YES indicates that Columns in the Table/View may have indicator variables. Indicator variables are available to receive the SQL indication that a Column is NULL or truncated, or to set a column NULL in UPDATE or INSERT SQL statements.

Indicator variables, if present, are used by screen handling for NULL display, and can be tested or set (NULL) in audits.

If no Columns are defined with SQLNULL=YES, indicator variables are not defined for the Table (no additional Table I/O area reserved).

When IMSADF II generates indicator variables, (at least 1 Column defined with SQLNULL=YES), one is assigned to each Column in the Table even though only those Columns specifying SQLNULL=YES will be eligible for indicator variable processing (SQL statements and audits).

Each indicator variable is a binary halfword. The Table I/O area length reflects the lengths of all Columns and all indicator variables.

The setting of SQLIND on the TABLE statement cannot be changed on a TABLE OVERRIDE statement.

Format of the Table I/O area as defined by the Table Layout Rule follows:

Table Def	in	it	i 0 i	າ :	[n	for	^ma	ati	on
Data El		en:	ts	((	Co.	lur	nn:	5)	
COL1		٠			٠				
COL2									
COLn	٠	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Indicat	or	٧¿	ari	ial	010	25			
IND1									
IND2									
INDn	•	•	•	•	•	٠	•	•	

#### SQLISRT=<u>YES</u> No

SQLISRT=YES indicates that all Columns in the Table are eligible for insert. SQLISRT=NO indicates that no Columns are eligible for insert.

Specifying SQLISRT=YES

- Causes SQLISRT=YES to be specified for each Column entry.
- Includes the Column in the VALUES clause of the SQL INSERT statement in the Table Handler Rule.

Examples of columns that cannot be inserted are those derived from built-in functions or arithmetic expressions. Other columns not eligible for insert are application dependent.

Specification of SQLISRT on the COLUMN statement overrides the SQLISRT operand on the TABLE statement.

The setting of SQLISRT on the TABLE statement cannot be changed on a TABLE OVERRIDE statement.

#### SQLNAME='1 to 50 characters'

The SQLNAME operand is required for all DB2 Tables/Views defined to IMSADF II. The SQLNAME operand on a Table statement can contain DB2 Table names in four forms:

Unqualified name Table name, a long identifier, one to 18 characters.

Qualified name 'Authorization ID. Table name'

> Authorization ID, a short identifier, one to eight characters.

Table name, a long identifier, one to 18 characters.

The Unqualified and Qualified Table names are valid for all SQL statements that can be included in a Table Handler Rule.

Join 'table1, table2, table3'

> Defining multiple names is used to define a view that is a join of several DB2 Tables. When this type of name is specified the normal DB2 restrictions for views are enforced. Namely, the View is not eligible for Update, Insert, or Delete.

Correlation-name 'dsn8.templ x'

> If a correlation-name is specified, it is defined as part of the Table name on all SQL functions except INSERT. The correlation-name is ignored by IMSADF II and SQL, except where referenced.

When specifying a Qualified Table name, a period separates the authorization ID and the Table name, and the entire name must be enclosed in quotes.

The SQLNAME operand is required to build the Table Handler Rule and to define SQL access to DB2.

The SQLNAME operand must be specified on the initial TABLE statement. It cannot be overridden on a Table/Segment OVERRIDE statement.

#### SQLUPD=YES NO

SQLUPD=YES indicates that all Columns in the Table are eligible for update. SQLUPD=NO indicates there are no Columns eligible for update.

Specifying SQLUPD=YES:

- Causes SQLUPD=YES to be specified for each Column entry, (except KEY=YES Columns).
- Includes the Column in the SET clause of the SQL UPDATE statement in the Table Handler Rule.

Examples of columns that cannot be updated are those derived from built-in functions or arithmetic expressions. Other columns not eligible for update are application-dependent.

Specification of SQLUPD on the COLUMN statement overrides the SQLUPD operand on the TABLE statement.

The setting of SQLUPD on the TABLE statement cannot be changed on a TABLE OVERRIDE statement.

## SKSEGS=0

SKSEGS=0, the default, indicates that Secondary Key Selection browsing is not available for this DB2 Table/View.

SKSEGS=n specifies the number of row occurrences to be displayed. indicates that this DB2 Table/View is eligible to be processed by Secondary Key Selection Browse functions under the following conditions:

The Table is defined in the DBPATH operand of the conversational Input Transaction Rule GENERATE (CVALL).

- A generic search is requested ('>', '<', '%', '\_') by the terminal operator, or an incorrect key, or no key is entered by the terminal operator.
- A user-defined Secondary Key Selection browse function is requested through a Primary Key audit.

DBPATH defines the Tables and Segments to be automatically retrieved by the IMSADF II transaction drivers. The keys to retrieve these Tables and/or Segments are supplied by the terminal operator or through audits.

#### COLUMN (FIELD) STATEMENT

The COLUMN (synonym FIELD) statement describes a DB2 Table/View column. IMSADF II supports a maximum of 512 columns per table/view. See the IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 Application Development Reference for a description of the FIELD statement and its operands.

The following COLUMN statement operands are used exclusively to define DB2 Tables:

#### KEY=NO YES

The KEY=YES operand specifies Columns to be used in the SQL WHERE clause of the Table Handler Rule. The relational operator between the DB2 Column name and the IMSADF II host variable is '=' for the standard SELECT, DELETE, and UPDATE statements. The standard Secondary Key Selection browse SELECT uses '>=' or '<=' or the DB2 LIKE predicate for its relational operator.

Standard processing functions assume that the key values uniquely identify a row. It is recommended that KEY=YES columns be defined in a Table UNIQUE INDEX for better DB2 performance in processing the SQL WHERE clause. It is NOT recommended for tables with multiple unique indexes to be processed under IMSADF II. If multiple unique indexes are defined, it would be possible for an end user to specify values which are a unique combination of all the KEY columns, but are not unique within each index. This would result in a DB2 error condition (SQLCODE -803).

If more than one column is defined as KEY=YES and a DB2 composite INDEX exists, the order of the columns specified to the Rules Generator should match the order specified in the INDEX.

Every Table must have at least one Column specifying KEY=YES to uniquely identify a row. This requirement exists for all data base segments (DL/I and DB2) that are defined to IMSADF II. If the Table is accessed through one of the standard SQL calls, the Table's KEY=YES Columns are included in the WHERE clause.

#### Notes:

- DB2 Columns defined as KEY Columns are not eligible for NULL processing.
- 2. TYPE=FLOAT and TYPE=BIT Columns/Fields cannot be defined as keys.

#### SQLISRT=<u>YES</u> NO

SQLISRT=NO identifies a Column that is not eligible for insert. This Column is not included in the VALUES clause of the SQL INSERT statement in the Table Handler Rule.

Arithmetic expressions are not allowed in the SET and VALUES clauses of the UPDATE and INSERT calls. These functions can be accomplished prior to issuing the SQL call with currently available Audit operations.

#### SQLNAME='1 to 50 characters'

The SQLNAME operand identifies the DB2 Column name as it is specified in the DB2 catalog. An unqualified SQLNAME is one to 18 characters long. If qualified, a period separates the qualifier and the unqualified Column name.

Quotes are required for all forms of SQLNAME, except the unqualified Column name.

Every Column in a Table specification must have a SQLNAME operand as DB2 addressability is to the column level.

The SQLNAME operand must be specified on each COLUMN statement that represents a DB2 Column. It cannot be changed by a COLUMN MERGE, or  $\mathsf{OVERRIDE}$  statement.

The SQLNAME operand may also identify a column name with a built-in function or arithmetic expression. The Rules Generator uses the value between the single quotes when building the column list in the SQL SELECT statement.

If a DB2 built-in function or arithmetic expression is used the Column should be marked as SQLUPD=NO and SQLISRT=NO.

Every DB2 Table (TYPE=TBL) must have at least one Column defined with a SQLNAME operand.

#### SQLNULL=NO YES

Identifies those Columns that can be NULL. NO indicates that this Column is defined to DB2 as NOT NULL. If the value YES is specified, the column can be NULL. SQLNULL=YES implies SQLIND=YES at the Table level has been specified.

A Column can be marked NULL in an UPDATE or INSERT function through the setting of the indicator variable. The indicator variable is set through a screen input convention or through Audit operations.

 ${\tt DB2}$  Columns defined to IMSADF II as KEY Columns are not eligible for NULL processing.

#### SQLORD=ASC DESC

SQLORD indicates the order of column values for those columns marked KEY=YES. ASC means ascending values and DESC means descending values. SQLORD is used to define the following Secondary Key Selection browse functions:

- Define the WHERE clause relational operator, '>=' or '<='.</li>
- Define the ORDER BY clause, ASC or DESC.
- Initialize keys, HI or LO values.

## SQLUPD=YES

SQLUPD=NO identifies a Column that is not eligible for update. This Column is not included in the SET clause of the SQL UPDATE statement in the Table Handler Rule.

For example, if a View Column is a virtual column (that is, derived from a built-in function), it cannot be updated in the SQL UPDATE call.

Default is YES, except for KEY=YES columns, which default to NO and cannot be changed to YES. KEY=YES columns are never eligible for update.

Arithmetic expressions are not allowed in the SET and VALUES clauses of the UPDATE and INSERT calls. These functions can be accomplished prior to issuing the SQL call with currently available Audit operations.

```
TYPE=ALPHA

ALPHANUM
BIN
BIT
DATE
DBCS
DEC
FLOAT
HEX
MIXED
NUM
PD
VARCHAR
```

The TYPE identifies the data format for the Column. The following table shows DB2 data types and the corresponding IMSADF II data types to which the data is converted.

DB2 Data Types	IMSADF II Data Types
INTEGER 32 bits SMALLINT - 15 bits DECIMAL precision - 15 digits scale - 15 digits CHAR254 characters VARCHAR32k characters FLOAT 64 bits	BINARY 4 bytes BINARY 2 bytes PDEC 8 bytes - 15 digits scale - 13 digits ALPHANUM255 bytes VARCHAR253 bytes FLOAT 8 bytes

Figure 2-1. DATA TYPES

Because IMSADF II uses the LENGTH operand to determine packed decimal precision, the DB2 column definition for decimal fields should be defined with a precision that will match the length defined in the IMSADF II rules.

For example, a DB2 column precision of (4,2) will not match an IMSADF II length of 3 and will have to be specified as (5,2).

Data conversion for field type FLOAT is supported only for display to FLOAT and FLOAT to display. Audit move operations support FLOAT to FLOAT, FLOAT to Alphanumeric, and Alphanumeric to FLOAT. Other audit move and arithmetic operations are not allowed on Columns/Fields defined as TYPE=FLOAT. FLOAT represents a long floating point number with approximate range of 5.4E-79 to 7.2E+75.

Data type VARCHAR has the following format:

			7
2	bytes	data area	
16	⊇ngth	( 1 to 253 characters )	

#### LENGTH=n

LENGTH specifies in bytes the data storage occupied by this column.

An exception is TYPE=VARCHAR, where LENGTH is the maximum length of the data area and does not include the halfword length attribute. This halfword precedes the data area, dynamically specifying the current data length.

When defining VARCHAR Columns to the Rules Generator only specify the maximum length of the data area. The Rules Generator reserves two additional bytes for the halfword length attribute.

When a data field TYPE=VARCHAR is modified:

Entered from a screen or batch BMP input - IMSADF II recalculates the current data length, based on the last non-blank character.

2-6 IMSADF II Application Specification Guide for DB2

Modified through audit operations, or modified from an Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine with the MAPPER function - the length of the source field(s) is used to calculate the current length of a target VARCHAR field. Trailing blanks are significant. IMSADF II does NOT recalculate the current data length, based on the last non-blank character.

Audit Exits and Special Processing Routines that modify a TYPE=VARCHAR field in their own data area must also set the current data length attribute unless the field is mapped to the SPA Table I/O area with the MAPPER function.

Recalculation of the current data length does not occur when a changed VARCHAR field is moved to the SPA Table I/O area with the COPYSEG function.

#### POSITION=n

DB2 Column definitions should **not** include the POSITION/START operand. If the RGLGEN Utility is used to extract definitions from the DB2 catalog the POSITION operand is not included. The Rules Generator automatically calculates position in the Table I/O area based on offset and length of preceding Columns.

When adding non-DB2 Column redefinitions to the DB2 COLUMN statements, the Rules Generator operands REDEFINE and OFFSET should be used to define the correct layout.

#### **GENERATE STATEMENT**

The GENERATE statement is used to request generation of

- static rules
- transaction drivers
- screen source

See the <u>IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 Application Development Reference</u> for a description of the GENERATE statement and its operands. The GENERATE operands that follow are used exclusively to generate rules for processing DB2 Tables/Views.

#### Table Layout Rule

OPTIONS=TABL SEGL

Format of the GENERATE statement is

#### GENERATE OPTIONS=TABL, TABLES=(id, id, ...id)

A Table Layout Rule is required for each Table/View to be processed by IMSADF II. The GENERATE option TABL/SEGL builds the Table Layout Rule control block describing the data type, length, offset, etc. of each Column in the DB2 Table/View. This information is utilized at execution time by the transaction drivers to interpret the data returned and updated through DB2 SQL.

DB2 addresses data at the Column level. Therefore, the Table Layout Rule must match the Assembler DSECTs generated in the Table Handler Rule.

The Rules Generator doesn't do any boundary alignment for DB2 SMALLINT (halfword), INTEGER (fullword), DECIMAL (doubleword), FLOAT (doubleword) data types. The generated Assembler DSECT in the Table Handler Rule is assembled using the Assembler (NOALIGN) parameter to ensure that it is consistent with the Table Layout Rule definition.

#### TABLES=(id,id,...id)

TABLES specifies the two-character ID (or IDs) identifying the DB2 Table/View requiring a Table Layout Rule generation.

#### Table Handler Rule

#### OPTIONS=TABH

The format of the GENERATE statement is:

A Table Handler Rule is required for each Table/View ID to be processed by the IMSADF II transaction drivers through standard processing functions, Audit operations or SQLHNDLR Calls from an Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine.

The GENERATE option TABH builds an Assembler program, containing standard static SQL calls and USER SQL calls.

The SQL functions supported are:

- CURSOR SELECT
- CURSOR UPDATE
- CURSOR DELETE
- CURSOR SELECT for multiple key selection row browse
- SELECT for single row inquiry
- UPDATE
- INSERT
- DELETE

All standard IMSADF II functions, (data base retrieval, Key Selection browse, and data base update) are performed using **only** the following SQL calls:

- CURSOR SELECT
- CURSOR UPDATE
- CURSOR DELETE
- INSERT

The Table Handler Rule, an Assembler language program is created by the Rules Generator. This program contains static SQL statements that execute the specified SQL calls. The Rules Generator dynamically invokes the DB2 pre-compiler which replaces the static SQL statements with additional Assembler code. The Rules Generator also dynamically invokes the Assembler, and the linkage editor. The Assembler is invoked with the Assembler (NOALIGN) parameter in effect to ensure that the Assembler DSECTs in the Table Handler Rule are assembled with no boundary alignment. This ensures that the Assembler DSECTs match the Table Layout Rule.

When the Rules Generator dynamically invokes the DB2 pre-compiler, a DBRM member is created and placed in a DBRM library. The DB2 BIND process must be invoked to include this DBRM in a DB2 Application Plan prior to executing an IMSADF II transaction that accesses the DB2 Table.

**Note:** Refer to "DB2 Specifications" on page 2-38 and "BIND Process" on page 2-38 for additional details.

#### TABLES=(id,id,...id)

TABLE specifies the two-character ID (or IDs) identifying this DB2 Table/View. Only one id should be specified if SQLCALL requirements vary between Tables. Only one id can be specified if SQLUSER=YES.

# SQLCALL=(CSELECT, INSERT, CUPDATE, CDELETE, KSELECT1) SELECT, UPDATE, DELETE, KSELECT2, DSQLCALL NONE

The SQLCALL operand specifies the SQL calls to be included in the Table Handler Rule.

- If SQLCALL is not specified, the five defaults CSELECT, INSERT, CUPDATE, CDELETE, KSELECT1 are taken.
- If SQLCALL is specified, all keywords including the defaults must be specified.
- Defaults are entered individually, or by specifying the DSQLCALL keyword to include all five defaults.
- If SQLCALL=NONE is specified, SQLUSER=YES must be specified and no other keywords are allowed.
- If SQLCALL=KSELECT2 is specified, the key Column in the WHERE clause that is manipulated by the DB2 LIKE relational operator must be the first key Column defined with an alphanumeric data type.

#### Internal IMSADF II Naming Conventions:

The following internal naming conventions are used by the Rules Generator when building DSECTs and SQL statements in the Table Handler Rule.

They should be used as a reference while reading the following sections defining IMSADF II SQLCALL functions.

The only time application developers need concern themselves with the names defined in the Table Handler Rule is when defining Host Variables in USER SQL statements. Refer to "USER SQL Statements" on page 2-18.

- column Column name as known to DB2
- tablename Table/View name as known to DB2
- :Axxffffn, :Axxffff\$, :Axxffffa Host Variables where -

#### SQLCALL Functions

DB2 SQL statements that are defined in IMSADF II Table Handler Rules are divided into three categories:

#### Standard

SQL statements that IMSADF II uses to perform its standard data base calls.

The standard IMSADF II SQL functions are:

- CSELECT CURSOR SELECT for single row inquiry
- CUPDATE CURSOR UPDATE for single row
- CDELETE CURSOR DELETE for single row
- INSERT INSERT of a single row
- KSELECT1 SELECT for Secondary Key Selection Browse
- KSELECT2 SELECT for Secondary Key Selection Browse

Standard IMSADF II data base calls are used for:

- Primary Key Selection CSELECT
- Key Selection browse KSELECT1, KSELECT2
- Data Base Update CUPDATE, CDELETE, INSERT
- Data Compare CUPDATE, CDELETE

Note: IMSADF II standard processing functions process a single row at a time using the DB2 cursor technique.

This technique is consistent with IMSADF II DL/I support, in that IMSADF II only processes the first occurrence of a non-uniquely keyed segment type.

#### Non-standard

SQL statements that IMSADF II  $\underline{\textbf{only}}$  processes when they are:

- Defined by the application developer using the SQLCALL operand.
- Invoked using Audit operations or with a SQLHNDLR call in an Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine.

The non-standard IMSADF II SQL functions are:

- SELECT SELECT of a single row
- UPDATE UPDATE of a single row
- DELETE DELETE of a single row

#### USER

USER SQL statements include additional Secondary Key Selection browse functions and SQL statements that require more complex WHERE clauses.

USER SQL statements are invoked invoked using Audit operations or with a SQLHNDLR call in an Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine.

**Note:** Standard IMSADF II SQL functions can also be invoked using Audit operations or with a SQLHNDLR call in an Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine.

The WHERE clauses for the DB2 SQL statements defined in the Table Handler Rule are built by the Rules Generator, except for USER SQL statements in which the WHERE clauses are user defined.

The WHERE clause contains those Column names specifying KEY=YES. If more than one Column indicates KEY=YES, the predicates are connected

with the 'AND' relational operator. Each KEY=YES Column is connected to a host variable, defining the Column I/O area, with the = relational operator. Secondary Key Selection browse functions use the >=, <=, or the DB2 LIKE relational operator.

The SELECT statements contained in the SQLCALL functions select all DB2 Columns defined to the Rules Generator for the Table/View.

If SQLDIST=YES is specified on the Rules Generator Table definition, then the DB2 DISTINCT keyword is specified on all SELECT statements in the Table Handler Rule.

#### CSELECT - CURSOR SELECT for Single Row Inquiry

CURSOR SELECT is the standard IMSADF II SQL function used to retrieve a single row from DBPATH DB2 Tables. This technique is used in order to protect against non-unique rows. The FETCH retrieves only one row into the Table I/O area.

FUNCTION

GENERATED SQL STATEMENT

CSELECTO - DECLARE CSELECT CURSOR FOR SELECT column1, column2, ... column(n) FROM tablename WHERE column1=:Axxffff1

OPEN CSELECT

FETCH CSELECT

INTO :Axxffff\$,:Axxffff\$:Axxffffa,...

CSELECTC CLOSE CSELECT

Figure 2-2. CURSOR SELECT, Standard IMSADF II Function

The CSELECT statement declares a CURSOR to SELECT a row, OPENs the CURSOR, fetches the row into the IMSADF II work area, and CLOSEs the CURSOR. The DECLARE CURSOR, OPEN, and FETCH are invoked through the CSELECTO function. The CLOSE CURSOR function is invoked with the CSELECTC function.

At execution time the CSELECT function can be used as follows:

- Standard Primary Key Selection if the Table ID is specified in DBPATH to indicate transaction driver retrieval.
- High Level Audit Language 'CSELECT', 'CSELECTO', 'CSELECTC'
- SQLHNDLR Call function 'CSELECT', 'CSELECTO', 'CSELECTC'

#### INSERT - INSERT of a Single Row

INSERT is the standard IMSADF II SQL function used to INSERT a single row into the DB2 Table or VIEW if allowed. All Columns that specify SQLISRT=YES are be included in the VALUES clause.

If SQLIND=YES is specified, each Column host variable that is defined as eligible for the null value, (SQLNULL=YES) is followed by an indicator variable. If the Column is null the indicator variable is set to -1 according to DB2 protocol.

FUNCTION GENERATED SQL STATEMENT

INSERT - INSERT INTO tablename
(column1,column2,....columnn)
VALUES (:Axxffff\$:Axxffffa,:Axxffff\$;.Axxffffa,...)

Figure 2-3. INSERT, Standard IMSADF II Function

At execution time the INSERT function can be used as follows:

- Standard data base insert function
- High Level Audit Language 'INSERT'
- SQLHNDLR Call function 'INSERT'

#### CUPDATE - CURSOR UPDATE for Single ROW

CURSOR UPDATE is the standard IMSADF II SQL function used to update a single row in a DB2 Table or View if allowed.

The CURSOR UPDATE function updates a row that has been previously SELECTed and modified. The CURSOR UPDATE function is used to FETCH a new copy of the row and hold the cursor open. If the IMSADF II data compare (DATACOMP) function has been specified, the new copy of the row is compared with an initial copy of the row saved prior to user modifications. Upon verification of the row the UPDATE is issued. If data compare is not specified the UPDATE is issued without data comparison.

**Note:** Columns defined as KEY=YES are not eligible for update and do not appear in the SET clause.

FUNCTION GENERATED SQL STATEMENT CUPDATEO -DECLARE CUPDATE CURSOR FOR SELECT column1, column2, ... column(n) FROM tablename WHERE column1=:Axxffff1 FOR UPDATE OF column2,...column(n) OPEN CUPDATE FETCH CUPDATE INTO :Axxffff\$,:Axxffff\$:Axxffffa,... **CUPDATEU** UPDATE tablename column2=:Axxfffff\$:Axxffffa,..., SET columnn=:Axxfffff\$:Axxffffa WHERE CURRENT OF CUPDATE CUPDATEC CLOSE CUPDATE

Figure 2-4. CURSOR UPDATE, Standard IMSADF II Function

The CUPDATE statement declares a CURSOR to SELECT a row, OPENs the CURSOR, fetches the row into an IMSADF II work area, updates the row in the Table (or VIEW if allowed), and CLOSEs the CURSOR. The DECLARE CURSOR, OPEN and FETCH are invoked through the CUPDATEO function. The UPDATE, where current of cursor, is executed with the CUPDATEU function. The close CURSOR is executed with the CUPDATEC function.

At execution time the CUPDATE function can be used as follows:

- Standard data base update function
- High Level Audit Language 'CUPDATE', 'CUPDATEO', 'CUPDATEU', 'CUPDATEC'
- SQLHNDLR Call function 'CUPDATE', 'CUPDATEO', 'CUPDATEU', 'CUPDATEC'

#### CDELETE - CURSOR DELETE for Single Row

CURSOR DELETE is the standard IMSADF II SQL function used to delete a single row from a DB2 Table.

The CURSOR DELETE function deletes a row that has been previously SELECTED. The CURSOR DELETE function is used to FETCH a new copy of the row and hold the cursor open. If the IMSADF II data compare (DATACOMP) function has been specified, the new copy of the row is compared with an initial copy of the row that was previously SELECTED. Upon verification of the row the DELETE is issued. If data compare is not specified the DELETE is issued without data comparison.

GENERATED SQL STATEMENT **FUNCTION** CDELETEO -DECLARE CDELETE CURSOR FOR SELECT column1, column2, ... column(n) FROM tablename WHERE column1=:Axxffff1 OPEN CDELETE FETCH CDELETE :Axxffff\$,:Axxffff\$:Axxffffa,... INTO CDELETED DELETE FROM tablename WHERE CURRENT OF CDELETE CDELETEC CLOSE CDELETE

Figure 2-5. CURSOR DELETE, Standard IMSADF II Function

The CDELETE statement declares a CURSOR to SELECT a row, OPENs the CURSOR, fetches the row into the IMSADF II work area, deletes the row in the Table (or VIEW if allowed), and CLOSEs the CURSOR. The DECLARE CURSOR, OPEN and FETCH are invoked through the CDELETEO function. The DELETE, where current of cursor, is executed with the CDELETED function. The close cursor is executed with the CDELETEC function.

At execution time the CDELETE function can be used as follows:

- Standard data base delete function
- High Level Audit Language 'CDELETE', 'CDELETEO', 'CDELETED', 'CDELETEC'
- SQLHNDLR Call function 'CDELETE', 'CDELETEO', 'CDELETED', 'CDELETEC'

#### SELECT - SELECT of a Single Row

SELECT is a non-standard IMSADF II SQL function that is used to retrieve a single row from a DB2 Table.

This statement can only be used successfully when the result Table contains a single row (that is, Unique key columns).

When this SELECT statement is executed, and the result Table contains more than one row, DB2 issues a SQL return code of -811 and the transaction is terminated.

```
FUNCTION GENERATED SQL STATEMENT

SELECT - SELECT column1,column2, ... column(n)
INTO : Axxfffff$;:Axxfffffa,...
FROM tablename
WHERE column1=:Axxffff1
```

Figure 2-6. SELECT, Non-Standard IMSADF II Function

At execution time the SELECT function can be used as follows:

- High Level Audit Language 'SELECT'
- SQLHNDLR Call function 'SELECT'

#### UPDATE - UPDATE of a Single ROW

UPDATE is a non-standard IMSADF II SQL function that is used to update a one or more rows of a DB2 Table.

If the key Columns in the WHERE clause define a unique key value then only one row in the DB2 Table is updated.

If the key Columns in the WHERE clause do not define a unique search condition then all rows for which the search condition is true are updated.

The UPDATE statement updates all columns defined in the Table/View that are eligible for update (SQLUPD=YES).

DB2 columns specified as KEY=YES are not eligible for update and do not appear in the SET clause.

FUNCTION

GENERATED SQL STATEMENT

UPDATE - UPDATE tablename
SET column2=:Axxffff\$:Axxffffa,...,
columnn=:Axxffff\$:Axxffffa
WHERE column1=:Axxffff1

Figure 2-7. UPDATE, Non-Standard IMSADF II Function

At execution time the UPDATE function can be used as follows:

- High Level Audit Language 'UPDATE'
- SQLHNDLR Call function 'UPDATE'

#### DELETE - DELETE of a Single Row

DELETE is a non-standard IMSADF II SQL function that is used to delete one or more rows of a DB2 Table.

If the key Columns in the WHERE clause define a unique key value then only one row in the DB2 Table is deleted.

If the key Columns in the WHERE clause do not define a unique search condition then all rows for which the search condition is true are deleted.

```
FUNCTION GENERATED SQL STATEMENT

DELETE - DELETE FROM tablename
WHERE column1=:Axxffff1
```

Figure 2-8. DELETE, Non-Standard IMSADF II Function

At execution time the DELETE function can be used as follows:

- High Level Audit Language 'DELETE'
- SQLHNDLR Call function 'DELETE'

#### KSELECT - SELECT for Secondary Key Selection Browse

The KSELECT1 and KSELECT2 functions are special cases of the standard IMSADF II CURSOR SELECT function. The Key Columns in the Where clauses are defined with '>=', '<=', or the DB2 LIKE relational operator.

These functions are used during Secondary Key Selection browse for accessing DB2 Tables/Views.

The KSELECT1 function is invoked if the terminal operator:

enters a partial key with a > or <

or enters an incorrect key

or

enters no key

and

the Table is eligible for secondary key selection (SKSEGS>0), and the KSELECT1 function was defined for the Table Handler Rule.

and

SPASQLKS was not set to a user defined function KSELECTn by a primary key audit.

The KSELECT2 function is invoked if the terminal operator:

enters a partial key with a % or \_

and

the Table is eligible for secondary key selection (SKSEGS>0), and the KSELECT2 function was defined for the Table Handler Rule.

and

SPASQLKS was not set to a user defined function KSELECTn by a primary key audit.

The Columns in the WHERE clause should be defined as Columns in a UNIQUE INDEX. The host variables in the WHERE clause may contain an initialized value, a partial value or full value depending on the terminal operator input.

The secondary Key Selection browse functions have an ORDER BY clause associated with their SQL SELECT statement. This ensures that the rows displayed on the key selection browse screen are in an ordered sequence. Even though a UNIQUE INDEX is defined for a Table the DB2 BIND process may choose to ignore it and search the Table using a Table scan technique. This causes the rows to be displayed in an arbitrary order. Specifying an ORDER BY clause may influence DB2 to use the INDEX to avoid the overhead of the sort associated with using an ORDER BY clause.

KSELECT2 is included in the key selection SQL calls only if SQLCALL=KSELECT2 is specified, and if the Table keys include at least one Column with an alphanumeric data type. Additionally, the LIKE relational operator is only available for the first KEY Column with an alphanumeric data type. IMSADF II alphanumeric data types are alphanumeric, alpha, numeric, and varchar. Normally DB2 does not use the index when processing WHERE clauses containing the LIKE relational operator. However, if a UNIQUE INDEX is defined for the Column being operated on by the LIKE relational operator, then DB2 may use it.

Use of the key select browse function should be reviewed for performance considerations, that is, number of rows in the Table/View satisfying the WHERE condition and potential number of terminal operator iterations of the browse function.

Each screen iteration during the key selection browse function is a separate transaction iteration. The result Table for the rows being browsed are retrieved for each screen iteration. This implies that the WHERE clause should be defined so that each subsequent key selection browse iteration be positioned correctly into the Table, beyond the rows previously retrieved.

The key selection browse function for large Tables and/or a large number of KEY Columns may be expensive in terms of CPU time and resources.

```
<u>FUNCTION</u>
             GENERATED SQL STATEMENT
KSELEC10 - DECLARE KSELECT1 CURSOR FOR
             SELECT column1, column2, ... column(n)
             FROM
                    tablename
                   column1>=:Axxffff1
             WHERE
             ORDER BY COLUMN1 ASC
  :Axxffff1 Holds initial key value entered on the first iteration.
             On subsequent iterations it holds the last key displayed
×
             on the Secondary Key Selection Browse Screen
×
             >= is used when SQLORD=ASC and <= when SQLORD=DESC
             OPEN KSELECT1
KSELEC1F
             FETCH KSELECT1
             INTO :Axxfffff$,:Axxfffff$:Axxffffa,...
KSELEC1C
             CLOSE KSELECT1
          - DECLARE KSELECT2 CURSOR FOR
KSELEC20
             SELECT column1, column2, ... column(n)
             FROM
                    tablename
             WHERE column1 LIKE : Axxffff2
             AND column1 >=:Axxffff1
             ORDER BY COLUMNI ASC
  :Axxffff1 Holds initial key value entered on the first iteration.
             On subsequent iterations it holds the last key displayed
  on the Secondary Key Selection Browse Screen: Axxffff2 Holds search value with the LIKE Predicate (% or _).
×
             The LIKE Predicate is ONLY available for the first
×
             character KEY Column.
             OPEN KSELECT2
KSELEC2F
             FETCH KSELECT2
             INTO
                  :Axxfffff$,:Axxfffff$:Axxffffa,...
KSELEC2C
             CLOSE KSELECT2
```

Figure 2-9. KSELECT, Secondary Key Selection Browse Function

The KSELECT statement declares a CURSOR to SELECT a set of rows, OPENs the CURSOR, fetches one or more rows into an IMSADF II work area, and CLOSEs the CURSOR. The DECLARE CURSOR and OPEN are invoked through the KSELECnO function. The KSELECnF function fetches the next row in the table and the KSELECnC function closes the cursor.

The following defines the WHERE clauses required for the Secondary Key Selection Browse functions with ONE and TWO key Columns:

KSELECT1 - ONE KEY

WHERE COLUMNA >= CURRKEY1

KSELECT2 - ONE KEY

WHERE COLUMNA LIKE INTTKEY1 and COLUMNA >= CURRKEY1

KSELECT1 - TWO KEYS

WHERE (COLUMNA >= CURRKEY1 AND COLUMNB >= CURRKEY2)

OR

(COLUMNA > CURRKEY1)

KSELECT2 - TWO KEYS

WHERE (COLUMNA LIKE INITKEY1 AND COLUMNB >= CURRKEY2)

(COLUMNA LIKE INITKEY1 AND COLUMNA > CURRKEY1 AND KEY2 >= INITKEY2)

INIT Initial KEY value: Specified by the user or HI or LO values assigned by IMSADF II.

CURR Current KEY value: Contains the initial key value on the first iteration. On subsequent iterations it contains the key of the last row displayed on the Secondary Key Selection Browse Screen.

#### Notes:

- The LIKE Predicate is ONLY available for the first character KEY Column.
- Three or more KEY Columns follow the same pattern of increased complexity.
- Invocation of Secondary Key Selection browse is controlled by the SKSEGS operand on the TABLE statement.

At execution time the KSELECT1 and KSELECT2 functions can be used as follows:

- Secondary Key Selection Browse (Conversational only)
- High Level Audit Language 'KSELEC10','KSELEC1F','KSELEC1C', 'KSELEC20','KSELEC2F','KSELEC2C'
- SQLHNDLR Call function
   'KSELEC10','KSELEC1F','KSELEC1C','KSELEC2C','KSELEC2C'

#### USER SQL Statements

User SQL calls may also be included in the Table Handler Rule for execution in the High Level Audit Language or in the SQLHNDLR Call function.

## SQLUSER=ND

SQLUSER=YES indicates that USER SQL statements with user specified WHERE clauses are to be included in this Table Handler Rule. Default value is NO. If YES, the user supplies a label, the SQLFUNC, and a WHERE clause. User SQL statements are specified immediately following the GENERATE OPTIONS=TABH SQLUSER=YES statement.

USER SQL statements can be executed through Audit operations or with the SQLHNDLR Call function in an Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine.

A maximum of 26 SQLUSER WHERE clauses can be specified for a Table Handler Rule.

User SQL statements have the following format:

GENERATE OPTIONS=TABH, TABLES=xx, SQLUSER=YES label sqlfunc where clause &SQLENDS

Note: The &SQLENDS label must be specified in columns 1 to 8 to terminate USER SQL statement definitions.

LABEL LABEL is a one- to eight-character name, where the first character must be alphabetic. The LABEL must be specified starting in column one.

USER specified LABELs cannot match any of the labels used to define the Standard and Non-Standard SQL statements. The functions defined in the previous section, (Figure 2-2 through Figure 2-9) represent the reserved LABELs.

LABEL defines the type of SQL function in the High Level Audit Language SQL call operation and the function name specified in a SQLHNDLR Call.

Another SQLUSER option is to augment the Secondary Key Selection browse function. In this case, LABEL has the format KSELECTn, where n is 3 through 9, (n=1 and 2 are reserved for standard Secondary Key Selection browse functions). Refer to "USER SQL - Key Selection Browse" on page 2-30 for additional details.

#### SQLFUNC

SQLFUNC defines the type of SQL statement to be executed. It must be specified starting in column 10.

The valid SQL statements are:

SELECT

UPDATE

DELETE

CURSOR

OPEN

**FETCH** 

CLOSE

Note: The SQL INSERT statement is not valid as a USER SQL statement. It's definition is the same as the standard INSERT function. If INSERT is required for Table processing use the standard INSERT function.

WHERE CLAUSE WHERE CLAUSE defines the DB2 operands required for the specified SQLFUNC. It must be defined in columns 19 through 71. If more than one line is required, then enter a continuation character in column 72 and start the continuation in column 16 of the next line.

WHERE CLAUSE contains the WHERE clause for a SELECT, UPDATE, DELETE, and CURSOR statement. It contains only the CURSOR label in the OPEN, FETCH and CLOSE statements.

#### Notes:

- USER SQL statements cannot override the Columns to be SELECTed or the Columns to be UPDATEd. The Rules Generator uses the associated Table Layout Rule for this information.
- When a SQL statement is defined to IMSADF II in a Table Handler Rule, all DB2 Columns defined in the corresponding Table Layout Rule are named and SELECTed for that Table/View. In the UPDATE and INSERT statements, the SET and VALUES clauses include all Columns specifying the Rules Generator operands, SQLUPD=YES and SQLISRT=YES.

The WHERE clause may contain any of the DB2 comparison operators, predicate relational operators and calculated values. The host variables in the WHERE clause are represented through the IMSADF II Column names.

The format of a host variable is - :ffff.xx

COLON - required host variable delimiter

ffff - one- to four-character Column ID

PERIOD - required

xx - two-character Table ID

**Note:** Table ID and Column ID must be previously defined in this Rules Generator input stream.

At execution time, the host variables are passed by the Auditor or the SQLHNDLR Call in a contiguous string and in the order specified in the WHERE clause. Reference the High Level Audit Language and Exit Functions sections for additional details on the SQLHNDLR Call.

The WHERE clause is included, as is, in the Table Handler Rule, with only the substitutions of host variables. The :ffff.xx is converted to :Axxffffn where n is a sequential letter A to Z uniquely identifying the appropriate USER SQL statement variables.

For the OPEN, FETCH, and CLOSE statements, the WHERE Clause contains the LABEL name of the applicable CURSOR.

The selected columns, and the DB2 SET and VALUES clauses are built by IMSADF II according to the Rules Generator Table/Column definitions, the SQLIND, SQLNULL, SQLUPD, and SQLISRT operands.

If the SQLDIST=YES is specified on the Rules Generator TABLE statement then all SELECT statements in the Table Handler Rule are defined with the DB2 DISTINCT keyword.

If 'FOR UPDATE OF' is specified in the WHERE Clause of a CURSOR statement, then 'FOR UPDATE OF' is included in the SELECT statement declared for the cursor.

For USER SQL key selection, specify (LABEL - KSELECTN, SQLFUNC - SELECT). The WHERE clause can contain the Key column host variables, non-key host variables and pseudo segment field host variables. If the host variables are not keys, the High Level Audit Language function SPAWHERE must be executed during a Primary Key Audit. SPAWHERE must reflect the host variables in the defined data format, length, and order. Additionally, the Primary Key Audit should specify which USER SQL key selection function to execute, (that is, KSELECT3, or KSELECT4) by also setting SPASQL in the Primary Key Audit. Refer to the High Level Audit Language section for details on defining SPAWHERE and SPASQL.

User specified secondary key selection WHERE clauses should be defined to allow for repositioning into the table for each subsequent iteration, when the terminal operator requests the next page of selections. This can be done by updating the host variables to reflect the last row on the page. A Secondary Key Audit routine called after each row is FETCHed can perform this function.

If a row is selected for display from the Secondary Key Selection browse screen, it is re-fetched using the standard IMSADF II CSELECT call. The host variables used for this fetch may be different from the values used for the USER SQL key selection function if non-keyed host variables are used for the secondary key selection browse.

When specifying KSELECTn (n=3-9) functions, only define the SELECT statement and the associated WHERE clause. Logic is included in the Table Handler Rule to DECLARE, OPEN, FETCH, and CLOSE the KSELECTn CURSOR. These functions are manipulated by IMSADF II secondary key selection modules when KSELECTn is specified.

Figure 2-10 contains examples of USER SQL statements.

```
GENERATE OPTIONS=TABH, TABLES=XX, SQLUSER=YES
* LABEL SQLFUNC WHERE CLAUSE
      columns
* 1 to 8 10 to 17 19 to 71
                  16 continuation (16 TO 71)
XXSELECT SELECT
                      WHERE TABCOLUMN1 BETWEEN : ffff.xx AND : ffff.xx
                  AND TABCOLUMN2 > :ffff.xx
                      WHERE TABCOLUMN1 IN (:ffff.xx,:ffff.xx)
WHERE TABCOLUMN1 <= :ffff.xx AND TABCOLUMN1 ~= 0
WHERE TABCOLUMN1 LIKE :ffff.xx FOR UPDATE OF
XXUPDATE UPDATE XXDELETE DELETE
XXCURS1
          CURSOR
XXCURS10 OPEN
                      XXCURS1
XXCURS1F FETCH
                      XXCURS1
XXCURSIU UPDATE
                      WHERE CURRENT OF XXCURS1
                      WHERE CURRENT OF XXCURS1
XXCURSID DELETE
XXCURSIC CLOSE
KSELECT3 SELECT
                      XXCURS1
                      WHERE TABCOLUMN1 BETWEEN :ffff.xx AND :ffff.xx
&SQLENDS
```

Figure 2-10. USER SQL Statement Formats

If additional DB2 function is required, native SQL calls may be issued in an Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine and mapped back to the SPA work area (Table ID or pseudo segment ID) via the MAPPER or COPYSEG function.

Only those SQL calls, that are executed by the IMSADF II transaction drivers, should be included in the Table Handler Rule. The number of SQL calls determine the size of an DB2 Application Plan and the size of an DB2 Application Plan is an important consideration in the performance of the DB2 system.

#### Summary for Table Handler Rule

In summary, all Column names in a Table are specified in the SELECT list and Indicator Variables if specified (SQLIND=YES on the TABLE statement) are associated with each Column. However, only those Columns that have SQLNULL=YES specified are eligible for Indicator Variable processing.

The Host variables, specified in the INTO clause, define the receiving I/O area for each Column. This I/O area may be in the IMSADF II SPA work area, an IMSADF II internal buffer area for secondary key selection browse or Data Compare, or in an exits work area.

The WHERE clause specifies the Column names, comparison operators '=', '>=', '<=', or the DB2 LIKE relational operator, and host variables representing the KEY columns.

IMSADF II support allows up to 512 Columns per Table. The maximum Table I/O area including Indicator Variables is 6000 bytes.

The DB2 pre-compiler issues a Return Code 4 when processing the generated Table Handler Rule. This is due to the absence of a SQL TABLE DECLARATION statement. For COBOL and PL/I, the DB2 DCLGEN function builds a data structure and SQL DECLARE. The pre-compiler matches the SQL statement usage against SQL DECLARE for consistency. Since the Rules Generator created Table Handler Rule is an Assembler program and DB2 does not provide DCLGEN support for Assembler language programs this SQL DECLARE is omitted. It provides no additional checking for IMSADF II.

### Summary of Rules Generator Operands for the Table Handler Rule

The Rules Generator operands that determine the content of the Table Handler Rule follow:

TABLE statement			
ID SKSEGS SQLIND SQLDIST	Naming convention for Table Handler Rule (ssssSid) If greater than zero then eligible for SKS calls Specifies indicator variables are to be generated Specifies the presence of DISTINCT in SELECT statements.		
SQLNAME TYPE	Table name in FROM and INTO clause Indicates these statements define a DB2 Table		
COLUMN statement			
KEY TYPE ID LENGTH SQLISRT SQLNAME	Indicates search columns in WHERE clause Indicates data type for the column host variable Naming convention for host variables where xx is Table ID and ffff is Column ID. Host Variables - :Axxffff\$ Indicator Variables - :Axxffffa KEY Columns - :Axxffffn (n is 1-9 or a-z) Indicates length of the column Indicates whether column exists in VALUES clause Column name		
SQLNULL SQLORD SQLUPD	Indicates whether column may be NULL Indicates order of key values (ASC, DESC) Indicates whether column exists in SET clause		
GENERATE statement			
SQLCALL SQLUSER	Specifies the SQL statements to be built Specifies user SQL statements and WHERE clauses to be built		

Figure 2-11. Rules Generator Operands Applicable to Table Handler Rule

#### Other GENERATE Statement Operands

#### OPTIONS=SGALL

Format of the SGALL GENERATE statement is:

#### GENERATE OPTIONS=SGALL, SEGMENTS=(id, id, ...id)

The SGALL operand is a Rules Generator operand that is compatible with DB2 table definitions and DL/I segment definitions.

The GENERATE option SGALL produces a Table Layout Rule for each DB2 Table ID and a Segment Layout and Segment Handler Rule for each DL/I segment specified in the SEGMENTS operands. If the SEGMENTS operand is not specified, a Table Layout Rule is generated for each DB2 Table defined in this Rules Generator input stream. For each DL/I segment defined in this Rules Generator input stream, both a Segment Layout and Segment Handler Rule are generated.

Table Handler Rules must be generated using the GENERATE OPTIONS=TABH statement.

## Input Transaction Rules

The Input Transaction Rules will support the inclusion of both DL/I segments and DB2 Tables in the same rule. Both segments and tables will be displayed on the same screen and updated in the appropriate data base management system.

The following existing GENERATE statement operands apply additionally to DB2 tables:

DBPATH list those DB2 Tables to be SELECTed by the transaction drivers and for which the terminal operator is prompted for keys in the conversational environment. Table ID order within the DBPATH operand becomes the processing order at execution time. If the DL/I segment IDs are intermixed, an entire DL/I path is still processed together.

TSEGS list those DB2 Tables to be allocated space in the SPA work area. Access to TSEGS is provided with SQL statements invoked with Audit operations or the SQLHNDLR Call function.

DLET eligibility indicates that the Table row may be deleted through an Audit operation or through the SQLHNDLR call function. This is the analogous function to DL/I segments.

ISRT If the transaction mode is Update or Delete and this Table row is not found, the row is INSERTed if the USERID has ADD authority and data was entered for the row. This is the analogous function to DL/I segments.

Because each DB2 table specified is considered by IMSADF II to be a root-only data base, each table will have insert elibibility independent of all other tables specified in the DBPATH.

For example, a user could specify:

DBPATH=(T1,T2,T3),ISRT=(T3)

In this case, data for table T3 may be inserted even though no rows exist for tables T1 and T2.

DATACOMP The DATACOMP operand specifies Tables/Segments which are compared for change prior to update or delete. This operand is valid only for conversational processing and should be specified for any Table/Segment that could have simultaneous updates by different users. Before an UPDATE or DELETE is performed, the Table row is SELECTed and compared with the copy saved at the first screen display. The CUPDATE and CDELETE Standard SQL statements are used for the data base update and data base delete functions.

Other existing operands specifying Input Transaction Rule generation requirements follow:

Request for Generation

OPTIONS=CVALL, TPALL, BAIT

• Transaction Identification

TRXID, DBPATH, TSEGS, AGROUP, LRULE, LINKLIB, ASMREQ

Transaction Exit Specifications

SPECIAL, LANGUAGE, BYPASS, STX, DLIEXIT (only data base DL/I calls)

Delete and Insert Eligibility

DLET, ISRT

Conversational and Nonconversational Only

CURSOR, DEVNAME, DEVTYPE, IMAGE, PFKDATA, PFKLIT, PFKNUMB

Conversational Only

SPOS, TRXNAME, DISPNAME, DATACOMP, DAMSG, ADDMODE, COMMLEN, KEYSEL, MAXKEY, PGROUP, SFORMAT, SHEADING, SOMTX, DKEY, DTRAN

Nonconversational Only

MODNAME, ORID

Batch Only

CNT, EOF

**Note:** The standard processing TWIN operands do not apply to DB2 Tables. They are only available for DL/I processing.

## Preload, Composite and Driver Link-Edits

The Rules Generator PRELOAD, COMPOSITE and DRIVER LINK-EDITS statements have not changed for DB2 transactions. Only DB2 transactions must be linked to an IMSADF II driver, as all IMSADF II transactions make use of the facility data bases.

The GENERATE statements incorporating SHTABLE (the list of Segment Handler Rules), also incorporates Table Handler Rules. The GENERATE OPTIONS applying to the expanded use of the SHTABLE operand include:

- PREL Preload Table
- CTLE, NCLE Composite Load Modules
- STLE, SPLE Conversational Link-edits
- NCLE, TPLE Nonconversational Link-edits
- BDLE Batch Driver Link-edit

# USING THE RULES GENERATOR EXECUTION PROCEDURE

A catalog procedure, ????G (???? - Substitute installed ADFID) is provided to invoke the Rules Generator. Reference the IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 Application Development Reference Rules Generator chapter, and the IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 Installation Guide for complete details.

A new PARM operand and several new DDNAME statements have been added to this procedure for the DB2 support.

#COLS A PARM operand specified to indicate the maximum number of DB2 columns for one SYSTEM statement in this execution of the Rules Generator. #cols is used in the GETMAIN size calculation.

Following is the format of the PARM operand specified on the Rules Generator JCL execute statement.

PARM=(#fields, #screens, #cols, sysid)

The #cols is the third positional parameter. SYSID remains an optional parameter. If the SYSID is not specified the PARM field would be specified as:

PARM=(#fields, #screens, #cols)

 $\mbox{\tt\#cols}$  is required for DB2 tables, since there is a significant size difference in the NAME and SQLNAME operands.

The default is 100. This includes Table and Column statements that contain the SQLNAME operand.

Input to DB2 pre-complier. Contains Rules Generator created ADFSQLHO Assembler language source for a Table Handler Rule.

ADFSQLHW Work file used by the Rules Generator during Table Handler Rule generation.

The DB2 pre-compilier stores a DBRM member for each Table DBRMLIB Handler Rule created into this cataloged MVS partitioned data set.

> DB2 requires that the member name be included in the JCL. This implies that only one DBRM member can be defined per invocation of the DB2 pre-compiler.

However, the Rules Generator can create many Table Handler Rules (and DBRMs) during one execution. Therefore, the hard coded member name in the DBRMLIB DD JCL statement is not used. It must be there, but it is treated as a dummy name.

In order for the Rules Generator to process the DBRMLIB DD JCL statement, the DISP parameter must be specified as OLD or SHR.

The Rules Generator builds a member name for each Table Handler Rule and DBRM created in the following format ssssSid where:

ssss - Rules Generator SYSTEM statement SYSID operand S - Constant

id - TABLE ID being processed

Note: This naming convention is the same as the naming convention used when the Rules Generator creates Segment Handler Rules.

DB2PRINT Used by DB2 pre-compilier as SYSPRINT file.

DB2TERM Used by DB2 pre-compilier as SYSTERM file.

## HIGH LEVEL AUDIT LANGUAGE

• All Audit Phases

DB2 Table Columns (fields) are eligible for all three phases of auditing:

- KEY pre SQL call
- PRELIM before transaction screen display
- PROCESS after transaction screen input

Additionally, all three legs of auditing apply.

- PO Automatic Field Assignment
- P1 Field Audit
- P2 Message sending
- All audit operations, except DL/I related are available for DB2 Table processing.

All field types are supported except TYPE=FLOAT Columns which are limited to data moves of FLOAT to FLOAT, FLOAT to ALPHANUMERIC, and ALPHANUMERIC to FLOAT. Arithmetic operations and other data conversions are not supported.

- All current audit routines, including arithmetic, data compares and moves, encode-decode, subroutine branching, message sending, dynamic screen attribute modification, transaction switching, are available to DB2 Table Columns.
- Refer to the Audit Language, and the Data Base Rules Specification chapters of <u>IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2</u> <u>Release 2 Application Development Reference</u> for additional details on all audit operations.

#### DB2 RELATED AUDIT OPERATIONS

- CONCAT and SUBSTR operations are available for character string manipulation for field types ALPHA, ALPHANUM, NUM and VARCHAR.
- IMMEDIATE DB2 SQL call operation
- Interrogate DB2 SQLCODE and SQLWARN(0-7)
- USER defined Secondary Key Selection Browse
- DB2 Column Null value (Set and Test)
- DB2 Column Truncation (Test)

# CONCAT

The CONCAT operation concatenates two source fields into one target field. The entirety of each source field is used in the concatenation. For VARCHAR fields this is determined by the current field length. If one of the source fields is null, the target is set to null.

## field = CONCAT field field

The fields used can be audited or related fields.

#### Example:

STR1 = CONCAT BAPSSTR2 BAPSSTR3

- will generate -

01G0BAPSSTR10202

2-26 IMSADF II Application Specification Guide for DB2

## 0001(BAPSSTR2,BAPSSTR3)

#### SUBSTR

There are two forms of the SUBSTR audit operation. In one the substringing is performed on the source field, while on the other, it is performed on the target field. For both operations, the target field name is in the related field area of the operation descriptor, the source field name is in the first data descriptor and the starting position and length of the substring are in the second data descriptor. The auditor uses the operation descriptor code to tell whether to perform the substring on the target or the source field. The two forms of the SUBSTR are as follows:

tgtfield = SUBSTR srcfield starting-position : length

SUBSTR tgtfield starting-position : length = srcfield

Any field name used may be an audited or a related field. Both starting position and length must be numeric constants or both must be fields containing numeric constants. The numeric constants must be 1 to 255.

Example: Source field substringing

STR1 = SUBSTR BAPSSTR2 7 : 3

NR

STR1 = SUBSTR BAPSSTR2 BAPSSTR3 : BAPSSTR4

- will generate -

Example: Target field substringing

SUBSTR BAPSSTR1 7 : 3 = STR4

OR

SUBSTR BAPSSTR1 BAPSSTR2 : BAPSSTR3 = BAPSSTR4

- will generate -

# IMMEDIATE SQL Call

An operation, comparable to the IMMEDIATE DL/I call operation, is available to execute SQL calls for a Table/View.

SQL call expressions are coded in the following format:

IF SQL label field <'>tableid<'> <NOT> OK

**SQL** Identifies the statement as a DB2 SQL function.

label Defines the type of SQL function, standard, non-standard, or USER SQL statement.

Following are the valid SQL functions that may be specified as labels.

SELECT, UPDATE, DELETE, INSERT CSELECT, CUPDATE, CDELETE KSELECNO, KSELECNF, KSELECNC CSELECTO, CSELECTC CUPDATEO, CUPDATEU, CUPDATEC CDELETEO, CDELETED, CDELETEC USER SUPPLIED - label is one to eight characters (first character alphabetic) and is a label that was specified in the SQLUSER LABEL section when the Rules Generator was creating the Table Handler Rule for the specified Table ID.

## Notes:

- All DB2 SQL calls are immediate. If non-immediate DB2 SQL calls are required, (that is, Table updates do not occur until transaction driver data base updates, after successful PROCESS Audits), the SETFLAG operation should be used.
- 2. The IMSADF II data compare DATACOMP function only applies to transaction driver updates or a SEGUPDTE Call function.

field Name of the field containing the search values. This field must represent a field containing the concatenation of all host variables in the WHERE clause.

For the standard SQL functions, the host variables are in the order in which the KEY columns are specified to the Rules Generator.

A keyword 'KEYFIELD' specifies that the current key associated with the Table will be used.

For USER SQL functions, the field must represent a concatenation of all host variables in the WHERE clause, in the order specified in the WHERE clause.

tableid Specifies the two-character Table ID of the DB2 Table to be accessed.

OK Indicates that SQLCODE is zero and SQLWARNO is not 'W'

The SQL call expression performs both a SQL call and a check of the SQL status code returned from the call. If the SQLCODE is zero and SQLWARNO is blank, the NEXT TRUE branch is taken. To determine the specific setting of SQLCODE and SQLWARN returned, a system expression using SQLCODE and SQLWARN(0-7) keywords can be used.

#### Example:

IF SQL DEPTSELC SAP2DEPT ES NOT OK ERRORMSG = 0805

- will generate -

01G8SAP2DEPT02 0805 If DEPTSELC function on table ES using the key from related field SAP2DEPT is NOT OK, issue error msg 0805 and terminate audit

# Interrogate SQL SQLCODE and SQLWARN(0-7)

To interrogate the DB2 SQL return code and warning conditions associated with a SQL call, the following system field keywords have been defined.

SQLCODE A fullword integer in the SQL Communication Area that contains a return code pertaining to the most recently executed SQL statement. Some of the return code values you might be interested in are:

**Zero** The SQL statement executed successfully.

- -n A negative integer value, DB2 error.
- +n A positive integer value, the SQL statement executed successfully, and an exceptional condition has occurred.

+100 No data exists to process.

SQLWARN Eight single character variables that denote a warning, of which only the first six are used by DB2.

SQLWARNO If blank, all other SQLWARNn variables are blank.
Otherwise the value 'W' and at least one other
SQLWARNn variable is also 'W'.

SQLWARN1 If 'W', at least one column's value was truncated when it was stored into a host variable.

**SQLWARN2** If 'W', at least one null value was eliminated from the argument set of a function.

SQLWARN3 If 'W', the number of host variables specified in the SQL statement is unequal to the number of columns in the table or view being operated on by the statement.

**SQLWARN4** If 'W', a prepared (that is, dynamic SQL) UPDATE or DELETE statement does not include a WHERE clause.

**SQLWARN5** If 'W', your program tried to execute a statement that applies only to SQL/DS.

SQLWARN6 Reserved.

SQLWARN7 Reserved.

The format of the SQLCODE system expressions is:

SQLCODE comparison-operator numeric-constant(s)

Where:

comparison-operator: =, ¬=, <, >, <=, >=, EQ,NE,LT,GT,LE,GE

numeric-constant: list of one or more numeric constants

Use of SQLCODE causes a compare between the corresponding system field and a list of one or more numeric constants. If any one compare is true, the result of the compare is true. It is recommended that only one constant be coded for a compare using GT, LT, GE and LE.

The format of the SQLWARNn system expressions is:

SQLWARNn comparison-operator literal

Where:

comparison-operator: =, -=, EQ ,NE

literal: 1 character warning value 'W' or ' '

Use of one of the SQLWARNn keywords causes the corresponding system field to be checked for a value of 'W' or ' '.

Following is a scenario of a check after a SQL call:

```
IF SQLCODE < 0
    ERRORMSG = 0001
  ELSE
       SQLCODE = 100
    IF
      ERRORMSG = 0100
    ELSE
      IF SQLWARNO = 'W'
        WARNMSG = 1000
      ENDIF
    ENDIF
  ENDIF
- will generate -
02H1SPASQLCD 030001
                         If SPASQLCD is less than 0, put out
                         error msg 0001 and terminate audit
Else If SPASQLCD is 100, put out
    0001(0)
03G9SPASQLCD
              040100
                           error msg 0100 and terminate audit
    0001(100)
                         Else IF SPAWARNO is 'W' put out
04G9SPAWARN000001000
    0001(W)
                           error msg 1000 and terminate audit
```

During execution of a SQL call, the IMSADF II SPA (Scratch Pad Area) fields SPASQLCD and SPAWARN are updated with the DB2 SQL return code and warning conditions. The values in these SPA fields are the values interrogated when the SQLCODE and SQLWARNn system expressions are coded.

The Auditor maintains additional error information if a SQL call results in an error or warning condition. The DB2 SQL Communication Area information (SQLCODE, and SQLWARN) is maintained in the IMSADF II SPA for each audited field flagged in error. The information can be mapped into user error and warning messages using VARLIST6, and VARLIST7.

VARLIST6 4 bytes - SQLCODE

VARLIST7 8 bytes - SQLWARN(0-7)

# USER SQL - Key Selection Browse

If a '>' or '<' is entered in a Key Column for a DBPATH table, the standard SQL statement KSELECT1 is executed.

If %string% or \_\_string (DB2 LIKE relational operator) is entered, the standard SQL statement KSELECT2 is executed.

If a USER SQL statement is required for the Key Selection browse function, then USER SQL statement must be defined to the key selection process in a Primary Key Audit.

**Note:** The overall invocation control for the Secondary Key Selection browse function is the Rules Generator SKSEGS operand.

Two audit operations are available to aid in the Secondary Key Selection browsing of DB2 Tables.

SPASQL Sets a system field in the IMSADF II SPA (SPASQLKS).

The number of the user defined key selection function to be executed is moved to this field by setting SPASQL in a Primary Key Audit.

**Note:** The value coded is of the form KSELECTn. Only the n is stored in SPASQLKS.

The USER SQL Key Selection browse function is invoked instead of standard Secondary Key Selection browse whenever the terminal operator:

enters a partial key with a >, <, %, or \_ or

enters an incorrect key

or

enters no key

and

the Table is eligible for secondary key selection (SKSEGS>0), and the specified KSELECTn function was defined in the Table Handler Rule.

and

SPASQLKS was set to a user defined function KSELECTn (n=3-9) by a primary key audit.

Syntax for SPASQL statement is:

SPASQL = {field, KSELECTn, n}

Where:

field a related or audited field that contains an 8 character name of the format KSELECTn, and n is a digit 3 to 9.

**KSELECTN** a constant, and n is a digit 3 to 9.

a digit 3 to 9.

Example of 3 forms of SPASQL statements:

SPASQL = RELFIELD SPASQL = KSELECT3

SPASQL = 3

- will generate -

01G3RELFIELD0202 Related field - KSELECTn, n is 3-9

SPASQLKS is set to n SPASQLKS is set to 3

02G3 0303 0001(3)

03G3 SPASQLKS is set to 3 0000

0001(3)

SPAWHERE Sets a system field in the IMSADF II SPA (SPAWHERE).

It contains the name of the field holding the secondary key selection WHERE clause host variables. SPAWHERE should be set in conjunction with the SPASQL secondary key selection function if the WHERE clause requires other than the Table Key Column values.

The field named in SPAWHERE should be updated, with a Secondary Key Audit after each FETCH. This is to accommodate repositioning for subsequent secondary key selection iterations.

The value coded is an eight-character IMSADF II field name. At execution time the field name is converted into a two-byte offset into the Table I/O area. The two-byte offset is the value stored in SPAWHERE.

Syntax for SPAWHERE statement is:

SPANHERE = {field, KEYFIELD}

Where:

field a related or audited field.

**KEYFIELD** a constant, that specifies that the key area for the Table contains the correct keys.

#### Example of SPAWHERE statement:

SPAWHERE = AUDFIELD SPAWHERE = RELFIELD SPAWHERE = KEYFIELD

- will generate -

01G4 0202 Audited field 02G4RELFIELD0303 Related field 03G4KEYFIELD0000 Table key area

# DB2 Column Null and Truncation (Test and Set)

• Test a DB2 Column for the null value.

A test is made on the Columns indicator variable. A value of less than zero indicates the null value.

Syntax for NULL test:

IF <field> NULL comparison-operator {ON,OFF}

Where:

field a related or audited field to be tested for

null value.

comparison-operator: =, -=, EQ, NE

(ON,OFF) ON - null, OFF - not NULL

Example of NULL test:

IF NULL = ON
IF AUDFIELD NULL = ON
IF RELFIELD NULL = ON

- will generate -

01G5 0200 test audited field 02G5 0300 test audited field 03G5RELFIELD0400 test related field

Set a DB2 Column to the null value.

The Columns indicator variable is set to a negative number.

Note: This operation cannot be used to set a Column to not null. In order to change a Column from null to not null, data must be moved into the Column. Part of the logic associated with the data move is to set the indicator variable to zero.

Syntax for Set to NULL:

field NULL = ON

Where:

**field** a related or audited field to be SET to NULL.

Example of SET to NULL:

AUDFIELD NULL = ON RELFIELD NULL = ON

- will generate -

01G7 0203 set audited field to NULL 01G7RELFIELD0203 set related field to NULL

Test a DB2 Column for truncation.

A test is made on the Columns indicator variable. A value greater than zero indicates truncation occurred when DB2 moved data into the host variable. The positive value in the indicator variable is the length of the source Column in the DB2 data base.

Syntax for Truncation test:

IF <field> TRUNC comparison-operator {ON,OFF}

Where:

field a related or audited field to be tested for

truncation.

comparison-operator: =, -=, EQ, NE

(ON,OFF) ON - truncated, OFF - not truncated

Example of Truncation test:

IF TRUNC = ON
IF AUDFIELD TRUNC = ON
IF RELFIELD TRUNC = ON

- will generate -

01G6 0200 test audited field 02G6 0300 test audited field 03G6RELFIELD0400 test related field

## MESSAGE GENERATION

To aid in the mapping of diagnostic information on SQL calls issued by the IMSADF II transaction drivers or an audit operation, VARLIST6 and VARLIST7 have been added to the message mapping process.

VARLIST provides a technique for mapping data other than Table/Column data into the message text.

Currently VARLIST1 can be used when Segment Handler Rule errors occur, to map the two-character DL/I status code into the message. VARLIST6 can be used in a similar manner to map the four-character DB2 SQL return code, (SQLCODE) into a message.

Messages generated by the Auditor can map both VARLIST6 and VARLIST7 data into the message text. The Auditor maintains an error table in the SPA for each audited field flagged in error. Fields that are set in error using the SETERROR function are not included in this table.

VARLIST6 4 bytes - SQLCODE

VARLIST7 8 bytes - SQLWARN(0-7)

## EXIT FUNCTIONS

## SQLHNDLR CALL

A SQLHNDLR function is available to Audit Exits and Special Processing Routines to retrieve or update DB2 data base Tables. The SQLHNDLR call, in conjunction with the appropriate Table Handler Rule, executes IMSADF II Standard, Non-Standard, and USER SQL statements to provide all the functions required to SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE a row in a DB2 Table/View.

The use of the Table Handler Rule eliminates the need for programming detailed DB2 SQL statements. It also eliminates the requirement that Audit Exits and Special Processing Routines must be processed by the DB2 pre-compiler, and be included in the DB2 application plan. Each Table/View that is accessed with a SQLHNDLR call must have a Table Handler Rule that contains the desired SQL statements.

When the transaction logic is controlled with a Special Processing Routine, it is also responsible for all data base updates (UPDATE, INSERT, DELETE). This can be accomplished either by individual SQLHNDLR calls or by using the automatic data base update routine, SEGUPDTE. A SEGUPDTE call causes all Tables/Segments in the IMSADF II SPA work area to be scanned to see if they should be INSERTED, UPDATED, or DELETED. Only the SEGUPDTE facility verifies that a Table row to be updated has not changed since originally fetched, if the IMSADF II data compare (DATACOMP) function was specified for this Table.

The logic of a Special Processing Routine should determine when and how a Table should be updated and issue the appropriate SQLHNDLR Calls or SEGUPDTE Call. In addition, any retrieval of Tables other than the Table rows SELECTED by the transaction driver, DBPATH, must be handled by the Special Processing Routine.

The application developer/programmer can perform data base I/O either into an area in the exit or into a Table I/O area reserved in the IMSADF II SPA work area. If the IMSADF II SPA work area is used, the Tables accessed must be described in the Input Transaction Rule.

I/O performed in the IMSADF II SPA work area has the following advantages:

- SQLHNDLR Call parameters are simplified.
- IMSADF II transaction drivers maintains the current key and updates it upon a successful FETCH.
- The Auditor can be invoked to validate Columns in the IMSADF II SPA work area.
- Input data is mapped to the appropriate Table Column(s) by the transaction driver.
- Table Columns in the IMSADF II SPA work area can be formatted and displayed by the cransaction driver.
- The programmer can retrieve specific Columns or the entire row by calling the Data MAPPER or COPYSEG function.

#### SQLHNDLR Call Format

The format of the SQLHNDLR call is:

```
In COBOL

WORKING STORAGE SECTION.

77 ID PICTURE XX.

77 FUNC PICTURE XXXXXXXX.

77 KEY PICTURE X(n). NOTE n is defined as necessary.

77 AREA PICTURE X(n). NOTE n is defined as necessary.

77 TLR PICTURE X(n). NOTE n is defined as necessary.

EXEC SQL

INCLUDE SQLCA
END-EXEC
```

CALL 'SQLHNDLR' USING ID, FUNC, {KEY, AREA, TLR, SQLCA}.

In PL/I

```
DCL (SQLHNDLR) ENTRY OPTIONS(ASSEMBLER, INTER);
           CHAR(2),
DCL
    ΙD
     FUNC
           CHAR(8),
     KEY
           CHAR(n),
                        /* n is defined as necessary
                                                       X/
     AREA
           CHAR(n),
                       /* n is defined as necessary
                                                       */
     TLR
           CHAR(n);
                       /* n is defined as necessary */
EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
```

CALL SQLHNDLR (ID, FUNC, {KEY, AREA, TLR, SQLCA});

**Note:** The EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA is <u>only</u> required if the optional parameter SQLCA is included in the call list. This implies that the common SQL Communication Area maintained by IMSADF II is not used. The Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine contains its own SQL Communication Area.

#### SQLHNDLR Call Parameters

The first two parameters of the SQLHNDLR Call are required. The remaining three are optional depending on the access requirements.

ID Two-character target Table/View ID. This ID is used to identify the appropriate Table Handler Rule and to determine whether the Table I/O area in the IMSADF II SPA work area is required.

FUNC A one- to eight-character label that defines the Standard, Non-Standard, or USER SQL statement to be executed.

Valid SQL statement labels are:

```
SELECT, UPDATE, DELETE, INSERT CSELECT, CUPDATE, CDELETE KSELECNO, KSELECNF, KSELECNC CSELECTO, CSELECTC CUPDATEO, CUPDATEC CDELETEO, CDELETED, CDELETEC USER SQL - label is one to eight characters (first character alphabetic) and is a label that was specified in the SQLUSER LABEL section when the Rules Generator was creating the Table Handler Rule for the specified Table ID.
```

# KEY Optional Parameter

If specified, key defines an I/O area in the Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine that contains the WHERE clause host variables for the SQL function being executed.

If key is not specified, the transaction driver uses the current key for the Table which is kept in a reserved area in the IMSADF II SPA work area. This key is located using the ID parameter. Whichever key area is used, must contain the complete key required by the SQL function being executed.

If the SQLHNDLR Call is made using the Table I/O area in the IMSADF II SPA work area and if the SQL statement executed results in I/O, (that is, FETCH, UPDATE) then the current key area associated with the Table is updated.

No attempt is made to parallel the current IMSADF II SEGHNDLR call DL/I support that always updates the key area. DB2 does not provide a key feedback area.

The application programmer must ensure that the key area is correctly defined to match the host variables in the SQL statement being executed.

## AREA Optional Parameter

If specified defines the I/O area in the Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine in which data base I/O is to be performed.

If AREA is not specified, the transaction driver uses the Table I/O area in the IMSADF II SPA work area for data base I/O.

# TLR Optional Parameter

If specified defines the Table Layout Rule associated with the Table ID.

If TLR is not specified, the transaction driver uses the Table Layout Rule in the IMSADF II SPA work area if available. Otherwise, the parameter is initialized to zero.

## SQLCA Optional Parameter

If the SQLCA parameter is specified DB2 maps the status of the SQL statement being executed into the SQL Communication Area defined in the Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine.

If specified it requires that the DB2 SQL Communication Area be defined in the Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine.

To define the SQL Communication Area requires coding the following DB2 statement in the Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine.

#### EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA

It also requires that the Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine be processed by the DB2 pre-compiler prior to compile, assemble and link-edit.

If the SQLCA parameter is not specified the copy of the SQL Communication Area contained in the IMSADF II transaction driver is used. DB2 maps the status of the SQL statement being executed into this copy.

This eliminates the need to define a separate copy of SQL Communication Area for each Audit Exit and Special Processing Routine.

The address of the IMSADF II SQL Communication Area is passed to Audit Exits and Special Processing Routines.

When the executed SQL function involves data base I/O the DB2 SQL return code (SQLCODE) and warning conditions (SQLWARN) are also mapped to the IMSADF II SPA work area fields, (SPASQLCD, and SPAWARN). Audit Exits and Special Processing Routines have addressability to these SPA fields.

**Note:** If native SQL statements are coded, then the SQL Communication Area must be defined in the Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine.

When any of the optional parameters are specified with the SQLHNDLR Call, all parameters that precede it must also be specified. If a Table

is not described in the Input Transaction Rule (DBPATH, or TSEGS), then all data base I/O must be performed in the Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine I/O area. When data base I/O is performed in the Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine I/O area the first four parameters are required.

The SQLHNDLR Call returns the following Return Codes in SPARTNCD.

- SQL statement was executed.
  - Check SQLCODE, and SQLWARN (SPASQLCD, SPAWARN) for completion status.
- 4 SQL statement was executed.
  - DB2 SQL return code is less than zero, or equals one hundred, (SQLCODE<0, or SQLCODE=100). Check SQLCODE (SPASQLCD).
- 8 SQL statement was not executed.
  - The SQL function specified by the LABEL parameter is not in the Table Handler Rule for Table ID specified.

## **EXIT PARAMETER LISTS**

- Audit Exit
  - The following parameters are passed to an audit exit routine:
    - audit field, field definition, op code, audit pcb, comopt, true/false, function, spa, pcb address list, cokey, related field, related field definition, data descriptor, SQLCA, reserved, reserved, pcb count, user pcb1, user pcb2, ...
- Special Processing Routine
  - The following parameters are passed to a special processing routine:
    - spa, comopt, audit pcb, message pcb, user pcb1, user pcb2, ...., iopcb, alternate iopcb, express iopcb, SQLCA

## RULES DOCUMENTATION

The following RDOC reports will reflect DB2 pertinent data. DB2 Table layout TYPE=TBL and DB2 Column data is reported. The DB2 Table name and Column names are not reported. These can be referenced by their IMSADF II Table and Column ID's.

The Table Layout and Table Handler Rules are treated the same as Segment Layout and Segment Handler Rules.

- SR01 Static Rules Summary
  - SR01 Segment Layout Summary SR02 Static Rules Summary
- Static Rules Summary
- SR02 Segment Layout Summary
- SR02 Input Transaction Rule Details SR03 Segment Where Used Report
- SR04 Segment Where Used Report
- SR04 Segment Layout Details
- SR05 Segment Where Used Report SR05 Segment Layout Details
- SR06 Static Rules Summary
- SR06 Input Transaction Rule Details SR07 Composite Load Module Details by System

#### DB2 SPECIFICATIONS

#### BIND PROCESS

In the DB2 environment the 'Application Plan' is used for scheduling and authorization checking. The plan is built by a DB2 BIND subcommand issued in the TSO environment to incorporate all related modules, issuing SQL calls. The Application Plan name in the IMS/VS environment is the PSB name. For an IMSADF II application, all Table Handler Rules and Audit Exits and Special Processing Routines with native SQL calls must be included in the BIND process for successful execution.

From the ISPF-MVS primary option menu, the DB2I option is selected. The DB2I MENU panel is then displayed listing DB2 functions.

DSNEPRI DB2I MENU ===> SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING DB2 FUNCTIONS: SPUFI Process SQL statements. Generate SQL and source language declarations.
Issue BIND, REBIND, or FREE for application plans.
PRECOMPILE, BIND, COMPILE, LINK, and RUN. DCLGEN BIND/REBIND/FREE 4 PROGRAM PREPARATION RUN a SQL program. Issue DB2 commands. RUN DB2 COMMANDS Invoke DB2 utilities. UTILITIES EXIT Leave DB2I. PRESS: END to exit HELP for more information

Figure 2-12. DB2I MENU Panel

The function BIND/REBIND/FREE is selected and the BIND/REBIND/FREE menu panel is displayed.

```
DSNEBPO1 BIND/REBIND/FREE

SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING:

1 BIND Add or replace an application plan.

2 REBIND Rebind existing application plan(s).

3 FREE Erase application plan(s).

PRESS: ENTER to process END to exit HELP for more information
```

Figure 2-13. DB2I BIND/REBIND/FREE MENU Panel

When the BIND option is selected, the BIND panel is displayed.

```
DSNEBP02
                                     BIND
===>
ENTER THE DBRM LIBRARY NAME(S):
1 DBRMLIB1 ===> 'db2.dbrmlib'
3 DBRMLIB2 ===> 'imsadf.adfdbrm'
                                                         2 PASSWORD1 ===>
4 PASSWORD2 ===>
5 DBRMLIB3 ===>
                                                          6 PASSWORD3 ===>
                                                         8 PASSWORD4 ===>
7 DBRMLIB4 ===>
ENTER THE MEMBER NAME(S) TO BE BOUND IN THIS PLAN:
         9 ===> sampsem 12 ===>
                                              15 ===>
                                                                   18 ===>
                                               16 ===>
17 ===>
                            13 ===>
                                                                   19 ===>
        10 ===> sampses
        11 ===>
                            14 ===>
                                                                   20 ===>
SPECIFY OPTIONS AS DESIRED:
Enter desired plan name.
                                                Enter ADD or REPLACE.
                                                 Enter YES to retain user list.
                                                Enter RUN or BIND.
                                                Enter RR or CS.
    MESSAGE LEVEL ..... ===> i
                                                Enter I, W, E, or C.
                                                Enter DB2 subsystem name. HELP for more information
    DB2 NAME
        NAME .... ==> dsn
ENTER to process END to exit
27
PRESS:
```

Figure 2-14. BIND Panel

On this panel enter the required DB2 BIND information:

- Libraries containing the DBRM entries
- DBRM member names to be included in the application plan
- application plan name
- other BIND options

DBRM entries include Table Handler rules, and Audit Exits and Special Processing Routines issuing native SQL calls.

On entry, the DB2 BIND process is executed in TSO foreground.

BIND options are described in the IBM DATABASE 2 Reference under the BIND subcommand.

## IMSADF II - DB2 NAMING CONVENTIONS

IMSADF II transactions execute in the IMS/VS online and batch environments, and support conversational and nonconversational processing. To uniquely define IMSADF II applications to IMS/VS, it is necessary to employ a naming convention that uses the IMSADF II major application system identification and the processing type as keys. These keys are established when link-editing the generalized IMSADF II application programs and defining the IMS/VS transaction names.

This naming convention where the IMSADF II transaction driver name is the same as the IMS/VS transaction name and PSB name has been extended to include the DB2 Application Plan name.

The following description provides a summary of the IMSADF II naming conventions:

- IMSADF II member names to be bound in a DB2 Application Plan include:
  - Table Handler Rules ssssSxx
  - Special Processing Routine (ssssUxx) with native SQL calls
  - audit exits (naming convention is user specified) with native SQL calls

## Note:

ssss = IMSADF II major application system identification S = Table Handler Rule U = Special Processing Routine

xx = Table ID, or Transaction ID

The DB2 Application Plan name is the same as the IMSADF II transaction driver and IMS/VS PSB name under which this IMSADF II transaction ID is executing.

## CHAPTER 3. RGLGEN UTILITY

## **DESCRIPTION**

The IMSADF II utility (RGLGEN), a DB2 TSO application program, is similar to the DB2 DCLGEN in function. It extracts Table and Column definitions from the DB2 catalog in the form of Rules Generator TABLE and COLUMN source statements.

The RGLGEN Utility can be invoked using Interactive Application Development Facility (IADF) panels as a TSO foreground/background program, or by submitting JCL to invoke a TSO background job.

The RGLGEN Utility executes in the TSO foreground or background under the control of the TSO Terminal Monitor Program (TMP). Required runtime parameters are entered on the IADF RGLGEN panel or are defined with the TSO DSN and RUN commands.

Multiple DB2 Table definitions can be processed with a single invocation. Each Table to be processed is defined as a record in a sequential input file. Output for each Table processed is routed to a member of a partitioned data set. Output is also routed to the submitting terminal or SYSPRINT, depending on foreground or background processing. Error, Warning, and Informational messages are also routed to the submitting terminal or SYSPRINT.

## DEPENDENCIES

- DB2 and its TSO attachment must be installed and available at execution.
- The DB2 Table (SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID) must be defined.
- The DB2 BIND process must be invoked to create the RGLGEN application plan.
- DB2 authorization must be granted to:

GRANT EXECUTE authority for the DB2 application plan.

GRANT SELECT authority for the SYSIBM.SYSCOLUMNS catalog Table.

GRANT SELECT authority for the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES catalog Table.

GRANT SELECT authority for the SYSIBM.SYSKEYS catalog Table.

GRANT SELECT, UPDATE and INSERT authority for the SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table.

When invoked using IADF, a 4096K TSO region may be required.

# SYSIBM.SYSCOLUMNS TABLE

The RGLGEN Utility extracts Table and Column definitions from the DB2 SYSIBM.SYSCOLUMNS Catalog Table. The SYSIBM.SYSCOLUMNS Table contains one row for every column of each table and view (including the columns of the DB2 catalog tables), defined to the DB2 system.

The following figure defines the view of the SYSIBM. SYSCOLUMNS Table that is interrogated by the RGLGEN Utility.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
NAME	VARCHAR(18)	Name of the column.
TBNAME	VARCHAR(18)	Name of the table or view which contains the column.
TBCREATOR	CHAR(8)	Authorization ID of the creator of the table or view.
COLNO	SMALLINT	Ordinal number of the column in the table or view.
COLTYPE	CHAR(8)	Type of column:
		'INTEGER'=large integer 'SMALLINT'=small integer 'FLOAT'=floating-point 'CHAR'=fixed length character string 'VARCHAR'=varying length character string 'LONGVAR'=varying length character string 'DECIMAL'=decimal
LENGTH	SMALLINT	The length attribute of the column; or, in the case of a decimal column, its precision. The number does not include the internal prefixes used to record actual length and null state where applicable.
		'INTEGER'=4 'SMALLINT'=2 'FLOAT'=8 'CHAR'=length of string 'VARCHAR'=maximum length of string 'LONGVAR'=maximum length of string 'DECIMAL'=precision of number
SCALE	SMALLINT	Scale of decimal data.
NULLS	CHAR(1)	Indicates whether the column can contain null values. 'N'=no 'Y'=yes
UPDATES	CHAR(1)	Indicates whether the column can be updated for reasons other than being the column of a read-only view. 'N'=no 'Y'=yes

Figure 3-1. SYSIBM.SYSCOLUMNS TABLE

#### SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES TABLE

The RGLGEN Utility also accesses the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES Table to obtain information regarding the unique indexes which have been created for the DB2 table being processed. This information, in combination with the information obtained from the SYSIBM.SYSKEYS Table, is used to determine which columns should have the KEY=YES parameter in the RGLGENO Rules Generator source produced by the RGLGEN Utility.

The following figure defines the view of the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES Table that is interrogated by the RGLGEN Utility.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
NAME	VARCHAR(18)	Name of the index.
CREATOR	CHAR(8)	Authorization ID of the creator of the index.
TBNAME	VARCHAR(18)	Name of the table on which the index is defined.
TBCREATOR	CHAR(8)	Authorization ID of the creator of the table.
UNIQUERULE	CHAR(1)	Whether the index is unique (Duplicates allowed, U=Unique)
COLCOUNT	SMALLINT	The number of columns in the key.

Figure 3-2. SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES TABLE

## SYSIBM.SYSKEYS TABLE

The SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES Table is used to obtain the name of the unique indexes which have been created for the DB2 table being processed. The SYSIBM.SYSKEYS Table is used to obtain the names of the key columns within the index. All key columns within all unique indexes will be given the KEY=YES parameter in the RGLGENO Rules Generator source produced by the RGLGEN Utility.

The following figure defines the view of the SYSIBM.SYSKEYS Table that is interrogated by the RGLGEN Utility.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
IXNAME	VARCHAR(18)	Name of the index.
IXCREATOR	CHAR(8)	Authorization ID of the creator of the index.
COLNAME	VARCHAR(18)	Name of the column of the key.
COLNO	SMALLINT	Numerical position of the column in the row.

Figure 3-3. SYSIBM.SYSKEYS TABLE

## SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID TABLE

When the RGLGEN Utility is invoked an optional DB2 Table, SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID, can be used to define IMSADF II Column IDs and to control the relationship between the IMSADF II Column ID and the DB2 Column names.

The RGLGEN Utility contains SQL statements that reference the SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID. Therefore, even if this Table is not used at execution, it must be defined to the DB2 system before a valid DB2 Application Plan can be created.

The Column definitions of the SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table are:

Column Name	Data Type	Description
COLNAME	VARCHAR(18)	Name of the column.
TBNAME	VARCHAR(18)	Name of the table or view which contains the column.
TBCREATOR	CHAR(8)	Authorization ID of the creator of the table or view.
ADFCOLID	CHAR(4)	IMSADF II Column ID.

Figure 3-4. SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID TABLE

When Rules Generator source is extracted from the DB2 catalog by the RGLGEN Utility the four-character IMSADF II Column ID is defined for each Column name.

There are two methods available to RGLGEN Utility for defining the Column ID.

 The RGLGEN Utility maintains the SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table. For each DB2 Column processed the RGLGEN Utility will interrogate the SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table to determine if this DB2 Column has been previously defined.

If the DB2 Column is found then the associated IMSADF II Column ID is used.

If the DB2 Column is not found then the following occurs:

- A master row contained in the Table is SELECTed. This row contains the last used Column ID.
- The value of this last used Column ID is incremented by one.
- The Table is interrogated to determine that this Column ID is unique.

If the Column ID is unique it is associated with the Column name.

If the Column ID is not unique it is incremented by one until a unique Column ID is obtained.

 Once a unique Column ID is obtained the Rules Generator source is created for the DB2 Column. A row is INSERTED into the Table recording the relationship between the DB2 Column name and the IMSADF II Column ID.

**Note:** The master row is updated after all requested DB2 Tables have been processed.

If the master row is not found one is INSERTed. The first IMSADF II Column ID used is 0001.

IMSADF II Column ID's are defined in the following order:

All numeric: 0001-9999
All alphabetic: AAAA-ZZZZ and aaaa, ####, \$\$\$\$
Alphanumeric: unique values not previously used

The second method available to the RGLGEN Utility does not use the SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table.

Each time the RGLGEN Utility is invoked, assign 0001 as the first Column ID, and increment each subsequent Column ID by one.

The advantages of the first method are:

- Eliminates the need for the user to define their own Column ID's.
- Defines unique IMSADF II Column ID DB2 Column name relationships within a DB2 system.
- If a DB2 Table is reorganized, or if a View is defined, the Column ID's associated with the Column names do not change. This is especially important because it implies that IMSADF II audits, specified by Column ID, do not have to be respecified to reflect the new Column ID's. Also, previously defined Rules Generator Column merge statements still reflect the same IMSADF II Column ID/DB2 Column name.

# IMSADF II ADMINISTRATOR CONTROL

The SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table can be accessed outside the control of the RGLGEN Utility, (for example, SPUFI).

This allows an IMSADF II administrator to:

INSERT new rows.

Unique combinations of Column name, Table name and Table creator can be added. The associated ADFCOLID is user defined.

Subsequent invocations of the RGLGEN Utility that process this row will use the user specified ADFCOLID.

When the RGLGEN Utility INSERTs new rows into the Table it only enters data into the Column name and ADFCOLID. The Table name and Table creator Columns are left blank (that is, the Column name is unqualified). These two Columns can be used by the IMSADF II administrator to further qualify Column names that appear in multiple Tables/Views. The Rules Generator SQLNAME operand in the output is qualified or unqualified based on the contents of the Table name Column.

UPDATE existing rows.

Change the RGLGEN Utility defined ADFCOLID to a user specified ID.

Qualify the Column name by defining the Table name and/or Table creator Columns.

- DELETE existing rows.
- UPDATE or INSERT the master row.

The master row contains the last used ADFCOLID. If the IMSADF II administrator changes the last used ADFCOLID, then subsequent invocations of the RGLGEN Utility will define ADFCOLIDs from this new starting position. The key for the master row is COLNAME='###############".

## PROGRAM PREPARATION

Before executing the RGLGEN Utility the following steps MUST be completed:

- DB2 and IMSADF II installation
- Install SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table
- BIND process

## DB2 AND IMSADF II INSTALLATION

- DB2 installation is defined in the IBM DATABASE 2 Installation Guide.
- Installing the RGLGEN Utility is an optional part of the standard IMSADF II installation process.

Note: Refer to the IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 Installation Guide for details on installing and customizing IMSADF II.

The RGLGEN Utility is supplied in load module format. It contains static SQL statements that have been processed by the DB2 precompiler. The corresponding DBRM is also supplied.

A copy of the DB2 TSO LANGUAGE interface module (DSNELI) must be available for the RGLGEN Utility link-edit.

Prior to executing the IMSADF II installation link-edit step the library referenced by the ALOAD DD statement may have to be changed. This library must reference the SMP DLIB library where the DB2 TS0 language interface module (DSNELI) resides.

Whether you install IMSADF II using the IADF installation dialogs, or the Batch method, an SMP system library (IMSADF.ADFDBRM) is created when the product function is applied.

This library contains the supplied DBRM for the RGLGEN Utility (MFC1Y25D), and can also be used to hold DBRMs associated with IMSADF II DB2 transactions.

# INSTALL SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID TABLE

This Table MUST be defined to your DB2 system if the RGLGEN Utility is used.

The IMSADF II distributed library (IMSADF.ADFMAC) contains a member (ADFDB2TC) that contains Table CREATE and Index CREATE source statements for the SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table.

NOT NULL,

NOT NULL)

The following is a listing of the DB2 Table definition statements for the  ${\sf SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID}$  Table.

CREATE TABLE SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID (COLNAME VARCHAR(18) NOT NULL, VARCHAR(18) NOT NULL, TBNAME **TBCREATOR** CHAR(8) ADFCOLID CHAR(4) IN DATABASE XXXXXXXX;

CREATE UNIQUE INDEX SYSADF.ADFCOL1
ON SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID (COLNAME, TBNAME, TBCREATOR);

This source must be modified and processed by the DB2 SPUFI function.

Copy this member to your own library before making any modifications.

The only modification required is to define a valid DB2 Data Base or Table Space, (Replace the XXXXXXXX).

3-6 IMSADF II Application Specification Guide for DB2

The modified source should then be used as input to the DB2 SPUFI function.

## **BIND PROCESS**

The DB2 Application Plan associated with the RGLGEN Utility must be built.

The Application Plan name is user specified. However, the DBRM member name specified is always MFC1Y25D.

The following is an example of what should be specified on the DB2I BIND Panel for the RGLGEN Utility Application Plan. The name of the Application Plan in this illustration is RGLGEN.

```
DSNEBP02
                                      BIND
ENTER THE DBRM LIBRARY NAME(S):
1 DBRMLIB1 ===> 'imsadf.adfbrm'
3 DBRMLIB2 ===>
                                                           2 PASSWORD1 ===>
                                                           4 PASSWORD2 ===>
5 DBRMLIB3 ===>
                                                           6 PASSWORD3 ===>
                                                           8 PASSWORD4 ===>
7 DBRMLIB4 ===>
ENTER THE MEMBER NAME(S) TO BE BOUND IN THIS PLAN:
         9 ===> mfc1y25d 12 ===>
                                                 15 ===>
                                                                     18 ===>
         10 ===>
                             13 ===>
                                                 16 ===>
                                                                     19 ===>
                             14 ===>
                                                 17 ===>
                                                                     20 ===>
         11 ===>
SPECIFY OPTIONS AS DESIRED:
    Enter desired plan name.
                                                  Enter ADD or REPLACE.
                                                  Enter YES to retain user list.
                                                  Enter RUN or BIND.
Enter RR or CS.
                                                  Enter I, W, E, or C.
Enter DB2 subsystem name.
HELP for more information
   MESSAGE LEVEL ..... ===> i
    DB2 NAME ..... ===> dsn
27
PRESS: ENTER to process
                                END to exit
```

Figure 3-5. DB2I BIND Panel, RGLGEN Utility

# TSO PROGRAM PARAMETERS

In order to execute the RGLGEN Utility in the TSO environment, data sets must be defined/allocated and TSO commands must be defined.

If the IADF RGLGEN panels are used to invoke the RGLGEN Utility all of the JCL and TSO commands required for execution as a TSO foreground/background job are predefined.

The following example defines the JCL required to invoke the RGLGEN Utility as a TSO background (batch) job.

```
JOB
//RGLGEN EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01
//STEPLIB
            DD DSN=IMSADF.INSTALL.ADFLOAD, DISP=SHR
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*
//RGLGENI
            DD DSN=TSOUSER.ADFDB2.RGLGENIN,DISP=SHR
            DD DSN=TSOUSER.ADFDB2.TABH,DISP=SHR
//RGLGENO
//RGLGENT
            DD
               SYSOUT=(X,,SYS)
//SYSPRINT DD //SYSUDUMP DD
               SYSOUT=(X,,SYS),DCB=(LRECL=133,BLKSIZE=133,RECFM=FB)
               SYSOUT=*
//ADFDUMP
            DD
               SYSOUT=(X,,SYS),DCB=(RECFM=FBA,LRECL=121,BLKSIZE=121,
               BUFN0=1), OUTLIM=10000
//SYSOUT
            ממ
               SYSOUT=(X,,SYS)
//REPORT
            DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTSIN
            א ממ
 DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
 RUN PROGRAM (MFC1Y25) -
     PLAN (RGLGEN) -
LIB ('IMSADF.INSTALL.ADFLOAD') -
PARMS ('B,Y')
 END
```

The required TSO program parameters are:

IKJEFT01 Execute the TSO Terminal Monitor Program (TMP).

STEPLIB Optional DD statement.

This DD statement defines the library that contains the IMSADF II trace modules, MFC1FLLM and MFC1V40.

If you wish to invoke the IMSADF II trace facility while executing the RGLGEN Utility this DD must be specified. When this DD statement is not specified IMSADF II tracing is disabled.

**RGLGENI** This DD statement defines the sequential card image (80-character) input file. Refer to "Parameters" on page 3-10.

RGLGENO This DD statement defines the output partitioned data set. The Rules Generator source created for each Table processed by the RGLGEN Utility is stored in a separate member of this data set.

The member name for each Table is passed to the RGLGEN Utility as an input parameter. Refer to "Parameters" on page 3-10.

RGLGENT This DD statement defines output routed to the terminal that invoked the RGLGEN Utility in the TSO foreground. The output contains the Rules Generator source statements and all RGLGEN Utility messages.

SYSPRINT This DD statement defines output routed to the printer. This DD is used if the RGLGEN Utility is invoked in the TSO background. The output contains the Rules Generator source statements and all RGLGEN Utility messages.

ADFDUMP Optional DD statement. This DD statement defines the IMSADF II trace facility output. This DD is only required when IMSADF II trace is requested.

SYSTSIN This DD statement defines the TSO TMP input.

DSN The TSO command that connects the TSO job to the DB2 SYSTEM.

RUN The DSN subcommand used to invoke a TSO application program containing SQL statements.

PARMS defines the runtime parameters passed to the TSO application program.

Two runtime parameters are passed to the RGLGEN Utility.

- Foreground/background indicator (F,B) a one character parameter defining the TSO application program output routing.
- SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table indicator (Y,N) a one-character parameter defining the use of the optional SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table, (Yes,No).

These two parameters are separated by a comma, and enclosed in quotes.

END The DSN subcommand used to disconnect the TSO job from DB2

#### INPUT

The input parameters required at execution are passed to the RGLGEN Utility as 80-character card image records defined in the sequential input file referenced by the RGLGENI DD statement.

If the RGLGEN Utility is invoked by submitting a TSO background job the RGLGENI DD statement can reference an existing sequential data set, or it can be processed as an inline data file.

If the IADF RGLGEN panels are used to invoke the RGLGEN Utility then the input parameters are defined on the RGLGEN GENERATION panel.

The following is an example of what should be specified on the IADF RGLGEN GENERATION panel.

In this example three Tables are defined. The output will be written to three members in the 'TSOUSER.ADFDB2.TABH' partitioned data set. The SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table is used to create IMSADF II Column ID's.

```
----- RULES SOURCE FROM DB2 CATALOG ----
                                                               SCROLL ===> PAGE
COMMAND ===>
  Available Commands: CAN Cancel
                                  LOC Locate a given member RES Reset
                  PGROUP ===> PG
                                   LEVEL:1
SYSID ===> SAMP
DB2 Subsystem Name ===> DSN
ISPF Library:
                                 IMSADF II
                                              ADFCOLUMNID TABLE ===> Y (Y|N)
                                                                ===> RGLGEN
                                              DB2 Plan Name
   PROJECT ===> tsouser
           ===> adfdb2
   GROUP
           ===> tabh
   TYPE
Other partitioned Data Set:
   DATA SET NAME
                 ===>
Line Commands: Inn Insert, Dnn Delete, Rnn Repeat, Mnn Move, Cnn Copy
Command Member Name DB2 Table or View Name IMSADF II Table ID
'''' DSN8.TEMPL' EM
 . . .
                          'DSN8.TDEPT'
                                                            DP
 . . .
                          'DSN8.TPROJ'
                                                            P.J
```

Figure 3-6. Rules Source from DB2 Catalog Panel

The Rules Source from DB2 Catalog panel parameters are:

SYSID The four-character IMSADF II System ID.

PGROUP The two-character IMSADF II Project/Group.

DB2 SUBSYSTEM NAME The DB2 Subsystem to which the TSO job should be connected.

DB2 PLAN NAME

The DB2 Application Plan Name specified for the BIND of the RGLGEN Utility for this DB2 sub system using the IMSADF II supplied DBRM (MFC1Y25D).

A default DB2 Application Plan Name of RGLGEN is displayed.

ADFCOLUMNID TABLE

Y - process with the SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table.

N - do not use the SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table.

ISPF Library

Output partitioned data set (RGLGENO DD).

Command

Available line commands.

Member Name

The Rules Generator source statements for this Table are routed to this member.

When using the IADF panels this input parameter is normally left blank. It is only required for non-standard member names.

Standard member names have the following format, and are built automatically by IADF when the Member Name is blank.

#### **SSSSTBXX**

Where:

ssss = Current IMSADF II system ID

TB = constant

xx = Current Table ID

Table Name

The qualified name of the DB2 Table/View to be processed.

If the Table Name is in quotes, IADF assumes it is qualified and passes it as it is.

If the Table Name is not in quotes, IADF assumes it is not qualified, appends the current TSO Userid and puts the entire name in quotes.

If the Table Name input parameter is not qualified, the RGLGEN Utility will terminate processing with an error message.

Note: Refer to the <a href="IBM DATABASE 2 Reference">IBM DATABASE 2 Reference</a> manual for details on DB2 naming conventions.

Table ID

The IMSADF II Table ID to be associated with this DB2 Table/View.

# **PARAMETERS**

The RGLGEN Utility treats all input parameters as keywords. Each keyword must be followed by an equal sign and its value. A comma is the only valid delimiter between keywords. Blanks are not valid, except after the last parameter value. There are no allowable abbreviations for the keywords.

The input parameters are as follows:

MEMBER

Table/View Column definitions written to this output member name.

One to eight characters in length. The first character must be alphabetic.

NAME

The qualified name of the DB2 Table/View to be processed.

A qualified DB2 Table name has the following format:

authorization-id.long-identifier

The maximum length of the qualified Table name is 27 characters.

The qualified Table name must be enclosed in single quotes.

**Note:** Refer to the <u>IBM DATABASE 2 Reference</u> manual for details on DB2 naming conventions.

ID The two-character IMSADF II Table ID to be associated with this DB2 Table/View.

Whether the input parameters are defined through IADF or built by the user, the input records should have the following format:

```
MEMBER=SAMPTBEM, NAME='DSN8.TEMPL', ID=EM MEMBER=SAMPTBDP, NAME='DSN8.TDEPT', ID=DP MEMBER=SAMPTBPJ, NAME='DSN8.TPROJ', ID=PJ
```

**Note:** These input records define the three Tables requested on the previous RGLGEN GENERATION panel.

## OUTPUT

The RGLGEN Utility queries the DB2 catalog for the specified Table/View Column definitions and creates the appropriate Rules Generator operands to define the Table layout.

The Rules Generator source statements are:

```
TABLE ID=,TYPE=TBL,SQLNAME=,SQLIND=
COLUMN ID=0001,SQLNAME=,SNAME=,
TYPE=,LENGTH=,DEC=,SQLNULL=,SQLUPD=
```

The SQLNAME operand on the TABLE statement contains the qualified Table name.

The SQLNAME operand on the COLUMN statement contains the qualified form of the Column name if the optional SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table was used, and the Table name Column was not blank. Otherwise, the SQLNAME operand is unqualified.

Note: Refer to "Rules Generator" on page 2-1 for details on the Rules Generator operands.

The output for each Table/View processed by the RGLGEN Utility is written to a separate member of the partitioned data set referenced by the RGLGENO DD statement. Eighty-character card image records are written to this data set. If the MEMBER exists it is replaced. If the member does not exist it is added.

If the RGLGEN Utility is executing in the TSO foreground then a copy of the Rules Generator source statements as well as all messages are routed back to the submitting terminal. This output routing is controlled by the RGLGENT DD statement.

If the RGLGEN Utility is executing in the TSO background then a copy of the Rules Generator source statements as well as all messages are routed to the printer. This output routing is controlled by the SYSPRINT DD statement.

## **MESSAGES**

The RGLGEN Utility generates Informational, Warning, and Error messages.

Informational - For each DB2 table successfully processed

Warning - Processing continues

Error - Processing terminates for current table

If the RGLGEN Utility is executing in the TSO foreground, messages are routed to the submitting terminal.

If the RGLGEN Utility is executing in the TSO background, messages are routed to the SYSPRINT DD.

## RETURN CODES

The RGLGEN Utility issues the following Return codes:

- Processing successful for all table(s), informational message(s).
- 4 Processing continues for current table, warning message(s).
- 8 Processing terminated for current table, error message(s).

## ABNORMAL TERMINATION CODES

The RGLGEN Utility does not generate any abnormal termination codes.

However, the TSO Terminal Monitor Program invokes the RGLGEN Utility, and controls the access to DB2. Therefore, the RGLGEN Utility is subject to TSO and DB2 Abnormal Termination Codes.

#### ERROR, WARNING, AND INFORMATIONAL MESSAGES

This section lists all messages generated by the RGLGEN Utility. Associated with each message is a more detailed explanation. If applicable, there is a brief description of the system action, and a suggested user response.

Each message generated by the RGLGEN Utility is preceded by a message identification header of the following format:

## ADFY9nn t

ADF Distinguishes this message as an IMSADF II message.

- Y The IMSADF II component code. Y Utilities message.
- 9 Range, of all RGLGEN Utility messages is from 900 to 999.
- nn Message sequence number.
- t Identifies the type of message, as follows:
  - I Information message. (Return Code=0)
  - Warning message. Execution continues. (Return code=4)
  - E Error message. Processing terminated for current Table. (Return code=8)

Each invocation of the RGLGEN Utility may generate multiple messages. However, the return code always reflects the severest message issued.

## MESSAGE PARAMETERS

RGLGEN Utility input parameters, DB2 status codes, and other dynamic information, are embedded in the message text.

The message text shown here displays these dynamic message parameters in lower case. During execution, the RGLGEN Utility substitutes current values into the message text.

The dynamic message parameters are:

- table.name DB2 qualified Table name.
- table.id IMSADF II Table ID.

• membername Output Member Name.

• sqlcode DB2 return code.

sqlwarn DB2 warning indicators.

• invalid.parm Invalid parameter.

ddname RGLGEN Utility DD statement.

function Function being invoked.

offset Starting position of the invalid data.

string
 Ten bytes of invalid data from the offset.

• column.name DB2 unqualified Column name.

• creator DB2 authorization-id.

• adfcolumnid IMSADF II Column ID.

## MESSAGE TEXT

ADFY900 I IMSADF II RGLGEN UTILITY SUCCESSFUL EXECUTION, TABLE NAME=table.name, TABLE ID=table.id, MEMBER=membername

**Explanation:** RGLGEN Utility processing was successfully completed with a return code of zero for this Table.

System Action: None

Operator Response: None

ADFY901 E SQL PROCESSING: SQLCODE=sqlcode, SQLWARN(0-7)=sqlwarn, TABLE NAME=table.name, TABLE ID=table.id, MEMBER=membername

Explanation: A non-zero return code was returned by DB2.

If SQLCODE is less than zero this is an error message.

If SQLCODE is greater than zero this is a warning message.

**System Action:** If the SQLCODE is less than zero the RGLGEN Utility terminates processing for this Table, otherwise processing continues.

Operator Response: Look up the SQLCODE in the <u>IBM DATABASE 2</u>
<u>Messages and Codes</u> manual and take the appropriate corrective action. If additional information is required to resolve the error (that is, full SQL Communication Area), invoke the IMSADF II Trace facility for the RGLGEN Utility.

ADFY902 E SQL PROCESSING THE OPTIONAL SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID TABLE:
SQLCODE=sqlcode, SQLWARN(0-7)=sqlwarn, TABLE NAME=table.name,
TABLE ID=table.id, MEMBER=membername

Explanation: A non-zero return code was returned by DB2.

If SQLCODE is less than zero this is an error message.

If SQLCODE is greater than zero this is a warning message.

**System Action:** If the SQLCODE is less than zero the RGLGEN Utility terminates processing for this Table, otherwise processing continues.

Operator Response: Look up the SQLCODE in the <u>IBM DATABASE 2</u> <u>Messages and Codes</u> manual and take the appropriate corrective action. If additional information is required to resolve the error (that is, full SQL Communication Area), invoke the IMSADF II Trace facility for the RGLGEN Utility.

# ADFY903 E INVALID TSO FOREGROUND/BACKGROUND PARAMETER - invalid.parm, VALID VALUES ARE F OR B

**Explanation:** The TSO foreground/background runtime parameter is invalid.

System Action: The RGLGEN Utility terminates processing.

**Operator Response:** The TSO FOREGROUND/BACKGROUND parameter is a runtime parameter that is specified in the DSN subcommand RUN. It is passed to the RGLGEN Utility when the TSO Terminal Monitor Program passes it control.

If the RGLGEN Utility was invoked using IADF this parameter is built by IADF. If this is the case and no modifications have been made to IADF, and the error persist, notify your IBM representative.

If the RGLGEN Utility was invoked using your own batch JCL stream, or you changed the IADF output, correct the PARMS keyword on the TSO DSN subcommand RUN and resubmit the RGLGEN Utility.

Refer to the TSO PROGRAM PARAMETERS section in this guide for additional information on runtime PARAMETERS.

# ADFY904 E INVALID OPTIONAL SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID TABLE PARAMETER \_ invalid.parm, VALID VALUES ARE Y OR N

**Explanation:** The optional SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table parameter is invalid.

System Action: The RGLGEN Utility terminates processing.

**Operator Response:** The optional SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table parameter is a runtime parameter that is specified in the DSN subcommand RUN. It is passed to the RGLGEN Utility when the TSO Terminal Monitor Program passes it control.

If the RGLGEN Utility was invoked using IADF this parameter is verified by IADF. If this is the case and no modifications have been made to IADF, and the error persist, notify your IBM representative.

If the RGLGEN Utility was invoked using your own batch JCL stream, or you changed the IADF output, correct the PARMS keyword on the TSO DSN subcommand RUN and resubmit the RGLGEN Utility.

Refer to the TSO PROGRAM PARAMETERS section in this guide for additional information on runtime PARAMETERS.

## ADFY905 E ddname DD IS NOT IN JOBSTEP OR IS DEFINED AS DD DUMMY

**Explanation:** One or more of the required RGLGEN Utility DD statements is missing or incorrectly defined, (RGLGENI, RGLGENT, SYSPRINT).

System Action: The RGLGEN Utility terminates processing.

**Operator Response:** If the RGLGEN Utility was invoked using IADF, define the required DD statements to IADF and reinvoke the RGLGEN Utility.

If the RGLGEN Utility was invoked using your own batch JCL stream, add the required DD statements to the JCL and resubmit the RGLGEN Utility.

Refer to the TSO PROGRAM PARAMETERS section in this guide for additional information on required DD statements.

ADFY906 E ddname DD function ERROR ENCOUNTERED BY MFC1V48. NOTIFY IMSADF II ADMINISTRATOR. TABLE NAME=table.name, TABLE ID=table.id, MEMBER=membername

**Explanation:** The IMSADF II module MFC1V48 is used to control output being written to members in the RGLGENO DD statement.

System Action: The RGLGEN Utility terminates processing.

Operator Response: The MFC1V48 module controls four functions associated with the RGLGENO DD statement.

**DEFINE** Verify that the data set specified by the RGLGENO DD statement is a valid partitioned data set.

**OPEN** Open the current member name as output for this Table.

WRITE Write the DB2 Table/View Column definitions.

CLOSE Close the current member name and add it to the partitioned data set specified by the RGLGENO DD statement.

If the RGLGEN Utility was invoked using IADF, define or correct the RGLGENO DD statement to IADF and reinvoke the RGLGEN Utility.

If the RGLGEN Utility was invoked using your own batch JCL stream, add a valid RGLGENO DD statement and resubmit the RGLGEN Utility.

If the error persist notify your IBM representative.

Refer to the TSO PROGRAM PARAMETERS section in this guide for additional information on the RGLGENO DD statement.

ADFY907 E INVALID OR MISSING INPUT PARAMETER(S) AT OFFSET-offset, STRING VALUE: string: CURRENT VALUES: TABLE NAME=table.name, TABLE ID=table.id, MEMBER=membername

**Explanation:** One or more of the three input parameters required by the RGLGEN Utility is invalid or missing.

**System Action:** The RGLGEN Utility terminates processing for this input record.

Operator Response: Review the required input parameters, correct the error(s), and resubmit the RGLGEN Utility.

Refer to the PARAMETERS section in this guide for additional information on input parameters.

ADFY908 E INVALID PARAMETER KEYWORD AT OFFSET-offset, STRING VALUE: string: VALID KEYWORDS ARE: NAME=, ID=, MEMBER= CURRENT VALUES: TABLE NAME=table.name, TABLE ID=table.id, MEMBER=membername

Explanation: One or more of the three input parameter keywords required by the RGLGEN Utility is invalid.

**System Action:** The RGLGEN Utility terminates processing for this input record.

Operator Response: Review the required input parameter keywords, correct the error(s), and resubmit the RGLGEN Utility.

Refer to the PARAMETERS section in this guide for additional information on input parameter keywords.

ADFY909 E DUPLICATE invalid.parm INPUT PARAMETER AT OFFSET-offset, STRING VALUE: string: CURRENT VALUES: TABLE NAME=table.name, TABLE ID=table.id, MEMBER=membername

Explanation: The specified input parameter is a duplicate.

System Action: The RGLGEN Utility terminates processing for this input record.

Operator Response: Eliminate the duplicate input parameter.

ADFY910 E invalid.parm INPUT PARAMETER TRUNCATED OR TOO LONG AT OFFSET-offset, STRING VALUE: string: CURRENT VALUES: TABLE NAME=table.name, TABLE ID=table.id, MEMBER=membername

**Explanation:** The specified input parameter value exceeds its maximum allowable length or the value has been truncated.

**System Action:** The RGLGEN Utility terminates processing for this input record.

Operator Response: Correct the input parameter value.

ADFY911 E invalid.parm INPUT PARAMETER IS TOO LONG OR TOO SHORT AT OFFSET-offset, STRING VALUE: string: CURRENT VALUES: TABLE NAME=table.name, TABLE ID=table.id, MEMBER=membername

**Explanation:** The specified input parameter value exceeds its maximum allowable length or is less than minimum allowable length.

**System Action:** The RGLGEN Utility terminates processing for this input record.

Operator Response: Correct the input parameter value.

ADFY912 E invalid.parm PORTION OF THE TABLE NAME INPUT PARAMETER IS MISSING OR TOO LONG AT OFFSET-offset, STRING VALUE: string: CURRENT VALUES: TABLE NAME=table.name, TABLE ID=table.id, MEMBER=membername

**Explanation:** Either the authorization-id or the unqualified Table name portion of the qualified Table name is missing or exceeds the maximum allowable length.

**System Action:** The RGLGEN Utility terminates processing for this input record.

Operator Response: Correct the Table Name input parameter value.

ADFY913 E INVALID TABLE ID INPUT PARAMETER AT OFFSET-offset, STRING VALUE: string: VALID TABLE ID CHARACTERS ARE ALPHABETIC, NUMERIC, OR a, \$, #

**Explanation:** The specified two character IMSADF II Table ID is not alphanumeric.

**System Action:** The RGLGEN Utility terminates processing for this input record.

Operator Response: Correct the Table ID input parameter value.

ADFY914 E COMMA MUST BE FOLLOWED BY A NON-BLANK CHARACTER,
OFFSET-offset, STRING VALUE: string: CURRENT VALUES: TABLE
NAME=table.name, TABLE ID=table.id, MEMBER=membername

**Explanation:** A blank character was encountered after a valid delimiter (comma).

**System Action:** The RGLGEN Utility terminates processing for this input record.

Operator Response: Remove blank characters from the input parameters. Do not put a comma after the last input parameter.

ADFY915 E IMBEDDED BLANKS NOT ALLOWED IN INPUT PARAMETERS,
OFFSET-offset, STRING VALUE: string: CURRENT VALUES: TABLE
NAME=table.name, TABLE ID=table.id, MEMBER=membername

**Explanation:** An imbedded blank was encountered in the input parameters.

**System Action:** The RGLGEN Utility terminates processing for this input record.

**Operator Response:** Remove blank characters from the input parameters.

ADFY916 E invalid.parm IS A REQUIRED INPUT PARAMETER. INPUT KEYWORDS ARE NAME=, ID=, MEMBER=. CURRENT VALUES: TABLE NAME=table.name, TABLE ID=table.id, MEMBER=membername

Explanation: The specified input parameter was not found.

**System Action:** The RGLGEN Utility terminates processing for this input record.

Operator Response: Define all required input parameters.

ADFY917 E NO COLUMNS FOUND FOR SPECIFIED TABLE. SQLCODE=sqlcode, SQLWARN(0-7)=sqlwarn, CURRENT VALUES: TABLE NAME=table.name, TABLE ID=table.id, MEMBER=membername

**Explanation:** The DB2 return code is +100. There were no rows found in the DB2 SYSIBM.SYSCOLUMNS Table representing Columns in the specified Table.

**System Action:** The RGLGEN Utility terminates processing for this Table.

**Operator Response:** Verify that the qualified Table name is valid and that it is defined in the DB2 catalog SYSIBM.SYSCOLUMNS Table for the current DB2 sub-system.

ADFY918 E INVALID COLUMN DATA TYPE: function. THE IMSADF II COLUMN TYPE AND LENGTH OPERANDS HAVE BEEN SET TO QUESTION MARKS.

**Explanation:** A DB2 data type not recognized by the RGLGEN Utility has been encountered.

**System Action:** The RGLGEN Utility continues processing for this Table. However, the Rules Generator TYPE and LENGTH operands have been set to question marks.

**Operator Response:** Verify that the DB2 data type is valid. If it is and this error persist contact your IBM representative.

ADFY919 E INVALID COLUMN LENGTH: function. THE IMSADF II COLUMN LENGTH OPERAND HAS BEEN SET TO QUESTION MARKS.

**Explanation:** A DB2 data type has been specified with a data length attribute that exceeds the allowable IMSADF II maximum length.

**System Action:** The RGLGEN Utility continues processing for this Table. However, the Rules Generator LENGTH operand has been set to question marks.

**Operator Response:** Verify that the DB2 data length is valid and that it is within the allowable IMSADF II maximum length for that data type.

If the DB2 length exceeds the allowable IMSADF II maximum then this Column cannot be processed directly by standard IMSADF II functions.

ADFY920 E INVALID COLUMN DECIMAL SCALE: function. THE IMSADF II COLUMN DECIMAL OPERAND HAS BEEN SET TO QUESTION MARKS.

**Explanation:** A DB2 data type decimal has been specified that has a SCALE value greater than the IMSADF II allowable maximum of 13.

**System Action:** The RGLGEN Utility continues processing for this Table. However, the Rules Generator DECIMAL operand has been set to question marks.

Operator Response: Verify that the DB2 decimal scale value is valid and that it is within the allowable IMSADF II maximum of 13.

If the DB2 decimal scale exceeds the allowable IMSADF II maximum then this Column cannot be processed directly by standard IMSADF II functions.

ADFY921 W INVALID COLUMN DATA TYPE: LONG VARCHAR. THE IMSADF II DOES NOT SUPPORT THIS DATA TYPE. THE DATA TYPE HAS BEEN CONVERTED TO VARCHAR.

**Explanation:** A DB2 data type of LONG VARCHAR has been encountered. IMSADF II does not support this data type. The data type is converted to SHORT VARCHAR which is supported by IMSADF II.

**System Action:** The RGLGEN Utility continues processing for this Table.

Operator Response: Verify that the DB2 data type is valid.

ADFY922 E NO INPUT RECORDS FOUND. THE SEQUENTIAL INPUT DATA SET REFERENCED BY RGLGENI DD IS EMPTY.

**Explanation:** The sequential input data set referenced by the RGLGENI DD statement is empty. There are no input records for the RGLGEN Utility to process.

System Action: The RGLGEN Utility terminates processing.

**Operator Response:** If the RGLGEN Utility was invoked using the IADF RGLGEN GENERATE panel, the input parameters specified are built into input records by IADF.

If the RGLGEN Utility was invoked as a TSO batch job then the RGLGENI DD data set must be defined, either as instream records or as a valid sequential data set.

In either case valid input records must be defined.

ADFY923 I OPTIONAL SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID TABLE USED. THE ROW SELECTED WAS:
COLUMN NAME: column.name, TABLE NAME: table.name, TABLE
CREATOR: creator, IMSADF II COLUMN ID: adfcolumnid

**Explanation:** This informational message is generated every time a previously defined IMSADF II Column ID is used. It implies that this DB2 Column has been previously defined to IMSADF II.

System Action: None

Operator Response: None

ADFY924 I OPTIONAL SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID TABLE USED. THE FOLLOWING ROW WAS A MATCH BUT WAS NOT SELECTED BECAUSE ANOTHER ROW CONTAINED A BETTER MATCH. COLUMN NAME: column.name, TABLE NAME: table.name, TABLE CREATOR: creator, IMSADF II COLUMN ID: adfcolumnid

**Explanation:** This informational message is generated when a DB2 Column is defined in the SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table multiple times. This can happen if the COLUMN name is defined once with a blank Table name and creator, and one or more additional times with non-blank Table names and creator.

System Action: None

Operator Response: None

ADFY925 I OPTIONAL SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID TABLE USED. THE MASTER ROW CONTAINING THE LAST USED IMSADF II COLUMN ID WAS NOT FOUND. A MASTER ROW WAS INSERTED WITH COLUMN NAME: column.name, and IMSADF II COLUMN ID: adfcolumnid

**Explanation:** This informational message is generated when the first DB2 Column is defined in the SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table. A master row containing the last used IMSADF II Column ID must be INSERTed the first time the SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table is used. After that the master row is UPDATEd.

System Action: None

Operator Response: None

ADFY926 E OPTIONAL SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID TABLE USED. THE LAST USED IMSADF II COLUMN ID IN THE MASTER ROW CONTAINS INVALID CHARACTERS OR IMBEDDED BLANKS. NOTIFY YOUR IMSADF II ADMINISTRATOR. COLUMN NAME: COlumn.name, IMSADF II COLUMN ID: adfcolumnid

Explanation: The last used IMSADF II Column ID is invalid. This should only happen if some one has modified the last used row outside of the control of the RGLGEN Utility.

System Action: The RGLGEN Utility terminates processing.

Operator Response: Modify the master row in the SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table so that it contains a valid last used IMSADF II Column ID, or DELETE the master row and INSERT a new row with a valid last used ID.

ADFY927 I OPTIONAL SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID TABLE USED. IMSADF II COLUMN ID VALUES ARE BEING SWITCHED FROM ALL NUMERIC TO ALL ALPHABETIC, OR FROM ALL ALPHABETIC TO ALPHANUMERIC. STARTING WITH IMSADF II COLUMN ID: adfcolumnid

Explanation: This informational message is generated when IMSADF II Column ID, 9999 is the last used ID and another Column ID is required. Once the RGLGEN Utility has exhausted all numeric Column ID's it automatically switches to generating all alphabetic IMSADF II Column ID's.

System Action: None

Operator Response: None

ADFY928 W TABLE DOES NOT HAVE A UNIQUE INDEX DEFINED. NO COLUMNS IN THIS TABLE HAVE THE KEY=YES PARAMETER SPECIFIED. RULEGEN ERROR WILL RESULT. TABLE NAME: table.name, TABLE CREATOR: creator

**Explanation:** The table does not have a unique index defined. IMS Application Development Facility II requires one or more columns in each DB2 table to be key columns.

System Action: None

Operator Response: Use the SQL CREATE INDEX command to define a unique index. Then, either re-run the RGLGEN job to obtain the KEY=YES parm(s), or add the KEY=YES parm(s) manually in the Rules Generator source in the RGLGENO member. This should be done prior to using the RGLGENO member for input to the Rules Generator or an error condition will result.

ADFY929 W TABLE HAS MULTIPLE UNIQUE INDEXES DEFINED. THIS MAY RESULT IN PROCESSING ERROR(S) AT IMSADF II EXECUTION TIME. TABLE NAME: table.name, TABLE CREATOR: creator

Explanation: The table has multiple unique indexes defined. All the key columns in the unique indexes have the KEY=YES parm specified in the Rules Generator source created by RGLGEN. When the end user is performing an insert under online IMSADF II, IMSADF II will enforce uniqueness over the combination of values in all the KEY columns. DB2 enforces uniqueness over the combination of values in the KEY columns of EACH unique index. It would be possible for an end user to specify values which are a unique combination of all the KEY columns, but are not unique within each index. This will result in a DB2 error condition (SQLCODE -803).

System Action: None

**Operator Response:** The unique indexes defined for the table should be re-examined and verified. It is not recommended for tables with multiple unique indexes to be processed under IMSADF II.

## CHAPTER 4. EXECUTION PROCESSING

#### At execution:

• All DB2 SQL calls issued by IMSADF II are processed by the Table Handler Rule defined for the DB2 Table/View being processed. The Table Handler Rules are the only standard IMSADF II modules that contain SQL statements. Table Handler Rules must be defined in a DB2 Application Plan prior to execution.

Special Processing Routines and Audit Exits that process IMSADF II SQLHNDLR calls use the IMSADF II Table Handler Rule interface.

Native static and dynamic SQL statements contained in Special Processing Routines and Audit Exits do not use the IMSADF II Table Handler Rule interface. These exits must be defined in a DB2 Application Plan prior to execution.

 The DB2 SQL return code, SQLCODE and SQLWARN, are mapped into IMSADF II SPA fields, SPASQLCD and SPAWARN for DB2 SQL calls issued by an IMSADF II Table Handler Rule, that result in data I/O or result in a SQLCODE of less than zero, or equal to one hundred.

The status, DB2 SQL return code, of DECLARE CURSOR, and CLOSE CURSOR SQL calls is not saved unless the call results in a SQLCODE less than zero.

## SIGNON AND MENUS

The signon process, and Primary Option and Secondary Option menu display apply for DB2 applications. An IMSADF II USERID must be authorized to execute an IMSADF II transaction at a specified level of intent (that is, retrieve, update, insert, delete). Additionally, if the DB2 authorization is violated by an IMSADF II user during a SQL Call, IMSADF II issues an error message with the appropriate DB2 SQL return code. Reference "Error Processing" on page 4-6 for more information.

## KEY SELECTION

Primary Key Selection

DB2 Table search values IMSADF II key Columns should uniquely identify a row and should represent the Table Index for optimum performance.

A row from each Table that the user specifies in the Rules Generator DBPATH operand is automatically fetched by IMSADF II at execution time.

At execution the key Columns are analyzed.

- If a >, <, %, \_ is found the secondary key selection browse function is invoked.
- Else, the standard SQL statement CSELECT is used to FETCH a row from the Table based on the key entered.

The DB2 SQL return codes associated with the CSELECT call are as follows:

SQLCODE=0 Display the fetched row on the transaction display screen.

**SQLCODE<0** DB2 error.

Display the PROCESSING ERROR message with the SQLCODE mapped into the message. Redisplay the primary option menu screen.

**SQLCODE=100** Invalid key. Invoke the secondary key selection browse function.

**SQLCODE>0** and ¬= 100 Processing continues.

Display the fetched row on the transaction display screen.

The DB2 CURSOR SELECT SQL statements are used by IMSADF II to ensure that only one row is fetched for each Table.

Primary Key Selection DECLAREs a CURSOR, OPENs the CURSOR, FETCHes a single row into the IMSADF II SPA workarea, and CLOSEs the CURSOR.

**Note:** If the WHERE clause used by the SELECT statement does not define a unique key, the IMSADF II standard functions only process the first row with that key value.

Secondary Key Selection Browse

DL/I secondary key selection allows a browse of all segments, a selected set controlled through secondary key audits, or a generic browse using a partial key and >.

The Secondary Key Selection browse function available for DB2 Tables allows for all of the DL/I capability as well as additional function only available to DB2, (that is, additional generic search arguments, and user defined arguments).

In order for a Table to be eligible it must be specified in the Rules Generator DBPATH operand, and SKSEGS > 0 must be specified on the Rules Generator TABLE statement.

At execution time the Secondary Key Selection browse functions are invoked as follows:

The KSELECT1 function is invoked if the terminal operator:

enters a partial key with a > or <

or

enters an incorrect key

or

enters no key

and

the Table is eligible for secondary key selection (SKSEGS>0), and the KSELECT1 function was defined for the Table Handler Rule.

and

SPASQLKS was not set to a user defined KSELECTn function in a primary key audit.

The KSELECT2 function is invoked if the terminal operator:

enters a partial key with a % or \_

and

the Table is eligible for secondary key selection (SKSEGS>0), and the KSELECT2 function was defined for the Table Handler Rule.

and

SPASQLKS was not set to a user defined KSELECTn function in a primary key audit.

When the KSELECT2 function, DB2 LIKE predicate relational operator, is invoked, the entire key column must be filled in. DB2 treats trailing blanks as significant characters.

For example:

— A DB2 Column is defined to the IMSADF II Rules Generator as follows:

COLUMN ID=0001, TYPE=C, LENGTH=006, SQLNAME=EMPNO, KEY=YES

- The Terminal operator enters: '%000%' in the EMPNO display area on the primary key selection screen.
  - Request for the KSELECT2 function to display all rows where the EMPNO Column contains the character string '000'.
- DB2 searches for EMPNO LIKE '%000% '. Note the trailing blank.
  - DB2 SQL return code is SQLCODE=100.
- IMSADF II redisplays the primary key selection screen with message: ADFE109 REQUESTED DATA NOT FOUND FOR GIVEN KEYS
- If the terminal operator enters: '%000%%' in the EMPNO display area on the primary key selection screen.
- DB2 searches for EMPNO LIKE '%000%%'. No trailing blanks.
  - DB2 return code is SQLCODE=0.
- IMSADF II displays the rows on the secondary key selection screen.
- A USER SQL secondary key selection browse function is invoked instead of standard secondary key selection browse whenever the terminal operator:

enters a partial key with a >, <, %, or \_

or enters an incorrect key

or . .

enters no key

the Table is eligible for secondary key selection (SKSEGS>0), and the specified KSELECTn function was defined in the Table Handler Rule.

and SPASOLKS .

SPASQLKS was set to a user defined KSELECTn function in a primary key audit.

The setting of SPASQLKS in a primary key audit allows any of the KSELECTn functions defined in the Table Handler Rule to be invoked, including the standard KSELECT1, KSELECT2, and the USER SQL KSELECTn. However, normally this technique is used to invoke only the USER SQL KSELECTn functions.

**Note:** If a valid key is entered, the secondary key selection browse function is not invoked even if a primary key audit has set SPASQLKS. To ensure that a user defined secondary key selection browse function is executed the primary key audit should also invalidate the key.

If the WHERE clause includes other than the key columns, the primary key audit must also set SPAWHERE to the name of the field holding the host variables for the WHERE clause. The Secondary Key Selection modules pass these host variables to the Table Handler Rule rather than the Table key columns.

Each screen iteration during the secondary key selection browse process is a separate transaction iteration. The selected rows of the Table being browsed are retrieved for each screen iteration. This implies that the WHERE clause should be defined so that each subsequent iteration is positioned correctly into the Table, beyond the row previously retrieved. A secondary key audit can be used to update the fields containing the host variables in the WHERE clause so that subsequent iterations are correct.

The standard secondary key selection browse functions KSELECT1 and KSELECT2 have an ORDER BY clause associated with their SQL SELECT statement. This ensures that the rows are displayed in an ordered sequence.

All secondary key selection browse functions are variations of the standard SQL statement CSELECT. The standard functions KSELECT1 and KSELECT2 have >, <, or LIKE as the relational operator in the WHERE clause and additional host variables for repositioning. The USER SQL statements KSELECT1 (n=3-9), have user defined WHERE clauses. At execution the secondary key selection browse function DECLARES a CURSOR, OPENs the CURSOR, FETCHes rows until the secondary key selection page is filled, and CLOSEs the CURSOR.

# • Keyareas

Keyareas represent the data base form of the keys and are maintained for DB2 tables to reflect the current values of Key columns.

**Note:** If the key input uses the IMSADF II COFIELD function with a character data type, the terminal input is retained in the COFIELD area of the SPA work area.

Key Columns can not be defined as null Columns. This implies that indicator variables are not supported as host variables in WHERE clauses.

## SCREEN HANDLING

The input and display of DB2 Columns is handled in the same manner as DL/I Fields. Key columns for DB2 Tables named in the DBPATH of an Input Transaction Rule, are processed in the same manner as DL/I DBPATH keys. If a key is changed on the transaction display screen, the transaction is processed as a new transaction, that is, a request for a new set of Table/Segment data.

The screen handler accepts a NULL value for input and output. NULL Columns are displayed as all '-' (Hyphens). This is the same display character used by DB2 SPUFI.

- When a user enters two or more consecutive hyphens into a Columns display area and the Column is defined as allowing NULLs (SQLNULL=YES,SQLIND=YES) then IMSADF II inserts a negative value into the Columns associated Indicator Variable. Only one hyphen is required for a single character Column display area.
- When a user enters data into a Column display area that contained all hyphens (NULL representation) IMSADF II stores the data into the Columns I/O area and sets the Columns associated Indicator Variable to zero. On a subsequent UPDATE the new Column value is changed in the DB2 data base if the Column has been defined to IMSADF II as eligible for update (SQLUPD=YES).

IMSADF II displays DB2 Columns on a screen with initialized values, (that is, Columns in Tables defined as TSEGS, or Columns in Tables defined in DBPATH for an INSERT transaction), as follows:

- Eligible for NULL Column: All '-' (Hyphens)
- TYPE=VARCHAR Columns: All ' ' blanks
- All other Column types: Underscores, blanks, or zero

When IMSADF II displays a fetched row all Columns on the screen are displayed with their data base value.

DB2 data types of FLOAT and VARCHAR are processed for input and display.

FLOAT is displayed in scientific notation.

VARCHAR is allocated its maximum length on the screen and displayed according to the current length.

- The 'N' OPTION is not processed for DB2 Tables.
- The standard twin processing support is not available for DB2 Tables.

#### **AUDITOR**

All Audit Phases are available for DB2 Table processing.

DB2 Table Columns are eligible for all three phases of auditing (KEY-pre SQL call, PRELIM-before screen display, and PROCESS-after screen input) as well as the three legs of auditing (Automatic Field Assignment, Field Audit, and Messages).

All audit operations are available, except DL/I related operations.

All current audit operations, including arithmetic, data compares and moves, encode-decode, subroutine branching, message sending, dynamic screen attribute modification, transaction switching, are available to DB2 Tables.

- DB2 related audit operations
  - The CONCAT and SUBSTR operations manipulating strings for field types ALPHA, NUM, ALPHANUM and VARCHAR.

The CONCAT operation allows concatenation of two source fields into a target field.

The SUBSTR operation operation can be performed two ways. Both are move operations, with one performing the substringing on the source field and the other performing the substringing on the target field.

The IMMEDIATE SQL Call is an audit operation comparable to the IMMEDIATE DL/I Call audit operation. It can execute all SQL calls specified in a Table Handler Rule.

After the Table Handler Rule executes the specified SQL function the DB2 SQL return code, SQLCODE and SQLWARN, is tested. If the SQLCODE is zero and SQLWARN0 is blank, the NEXT TRUE branch is taken.

Two additional operations are available to test the results of the SQL call executed by the Table Handler Rule. These operations allow the SQLCODE to be compared with a list of one or more numeric constants, and SQLWARN to be compared with either a blank or 'W' constant. SQLCODE = 0 and SQLWARN0 = blank implies no errors or warnings. Otherwise, error or warning conditions exist.

 Two operations are available to customize the secondary key selection browse function. They are only valid during primary key audit and are used by secondary key selection browse.

The SPASQL operation sets the IMSADF II SPA fields, SPASQLKS, to the number of the standard or user defined secondary key selection browse function to be invoked.

The SPAWHERE operation sets the IMSADF II SPA field, SPAWHERE to the name of the field that contains the host variables to be used by the secondary key selection browse function being invoked.

The field named in SPAWHERE should be updated, with a secondary key audit after each FETCH. This is to accommodate repositioning for subsequent secondary key selection iterations.

 Operations are available to test a DB2 Column for NULL or Truncation status, or to set a field to NULL.

To test a column for NULL or Truncation or set a column NULL, indicator variables must have been generated for the Table, SQLIND=YES, and SQLNULL=YES must have been specified for the Column.

Note: No operation has been defined to set a Column to not NULL. In order to change a Column from NULL to not NULL, data must be moved into the Column. Part of the logic associated

with data move operations is to set the indicator variable to zero.

## MESSAGE HANDLING

## **ERROR AND WARNING MESSAGES**

The Auditor function of flagging a field in error or for warning message applies to DB2 Columns. Appropriate error or warning messages are displayed from the IMSADF II Message Data Base.

For DB2 SQL calls issued by the auditor that result in a field being flagged in error, the Auditor maintains additional error information. The DB2 SQL return code, SQLCODE and SQLWARN are saved. This information can be used during message generation by specifying VARLIST6 and VARLIST7 for mapping in a user message.

### ERROR PROCESSING

On return from a SQL call issued by a Table Handler Rule, the DB2 SQL return code, SQLCODE, in the SQL Communications Area (SQLCA) is tested.

If the SQLCODE is 100, the basic DL/I logic for NOT FOUND is followed. This implies a REQUESTED DATA NOT FOUND message, invocation of the Secondary Key Selection browse function listing available rows, or an IMS/VS ROLL call if the SQLCODE=100 is encountered during data base update logic and the updates have been partially completed.

If the SQLCODE is < 0 is received, the current DL/I logic for PROCESSING LOGIC error is followed. The current IMSADF II transaction is terminated, an error screen is displayed, and control is returned to the Primary Option Menu screen.

If the SQLCODE is >= 0 (except 100), processing continues.

If SQLWARNO and SQLWARNO are set to 'W', indicating truncation, processing continues. It is the IMSADF II application developers responsibility to test for truncation.

Figure 4-1 describes the IMSADF II action and SQLCODE value.

<u>SQLCODE</u> >=0 & ¬= 100	ACTION  • Processing continues.
<0	<ul> <li>Conversational Environment         -REQUESTED DATA NOT FOUND message and keys in error highlighted         -Secondary Key Selection Browse for list of rows for selection         -Terminate Secondary Key Selection Browse, display last Secondary Key Selection screen         -ROLL call and error screen (using Express IOPCB) if 100 occurred and updates were in progress</li> <li>Nonconversational Environment         -REQUESTED DATA NOT FOUND message on Transaction display screen</li> <li>Batch Environment         -REQUESTED DATA NOT FOUND message on Transaction register and ERRMSG data set.         Transaction in error is written to the ERRTRX data set.</li> <li>Conversational Environment         -PROCESSING ERROR message with SQLCA appropriate values and return to Primary Option Menu screen</li> <li>Nonconversational Environment         -PROCESSING ERROR message with SQLCA appropriate values to a stand alone error screen. That is, the segment display screen is not chained.</li> <li>Batch Environment         -PROCESSING ERROR message with SQLCA appropriate values to transaction register and ERRMSG data set. Transaction in error is written to the ERRIRX data set.</li> <li>ALL Environments         -ROLL CALL if successful previous updates</li> </ul>

Figure 4-1. SQLCODE and IMSADF II ACTION

```
OPTION: ERROR MESSAGES

ADFE225 No action - Processing error (DB2 STATUS= )
```

Figure 4-2. IMSADF II SQL Error Message (SQLCODE < 0)

Figure 4-2 shows the content of the error message generated when a SQL call issued by a transaction driver, (not including SQL calls issued through audit operations or the SQLHNDLR Call function) that results in a DB2 SQL return code of less than zero, (that is, SQLCODE < 0). This message is displayed on the error screen in conversational or nonconversational environments. A similar error message is written to the batch ERRTRX data set in the batch environment.

# DATA BASE HANDLING

The IMSADF II standard data base update functions are performed automatically after the PROCESS audit phase has been successfully completed. Updates of DB2 Tables are performed with the IMSADF II standard SQL statements CUPDATE, CDELETE, and INSERT.

#### CUPDATE - CURSOR UPDATE FOR SINGLE ROW

CURSOR UPDATE is the standard IMSADF II SQL statement used to update a single row in a DB2 Table or View if allowed.

The CURSOR UPDATE function updates a row that has been previously SELECTED and modified.

The CURSOR UPDATE function is used to FETCH a new copy of the row and hold the cursor open. The SQL FOR UPDATE OF clause is specified on the DECLARE CURSOR statement to allow the CURSOR to be referenced on the subsequent UPDATE statement.

The row to be updated is FETCHed into an IMSADF II I/O area.

If the IMSADF II data compare (DATACOMP) function is specified for the Table, the row fetched into the IMSADF II I/O area is compared with a copy of the row saved in the SPA from when the row was initially fetched. If data compare is only specified for a single Column (DCFIELD), then only that Column was saved, and only that Column is compared.

If data compare fails and no previous data base updates, (DL/I or DB2), have occurred within this sync point, the transaction terminates with an error message. A ROLL CALL is issued if previous data base updates have occurred.

If data compare is successful, or the data compare function is not specified for this Table, IMSADF II issues the UPDATE SQL call using the WHERE CURRENT OF CURSOR clause, pointing at the modified row in the SPA.

**Note:** All DB2 Columns defined to IMSADF II as eligible for update (SQLUPD=YES) are included in the SET clause of the SQL UPDATE statement. Key columns are not eligible for Update.

The DB2 SQL return codes associated with the CUPDATE call are as follows:

SQLCODE=0 Processing continues.

Redisplay the transaction display screen with the DATA MODIFIED SUCCESSFULLY completion message.

**SQLCODE(0** Processing terminates - DB2 error.

Display the PROCESSING ERROR message with the SQLCODE mapped into the message. Redisplay the primary option menu screen if no previous data base updates. Issue a ROLL CALL and display error screen if previous data base updates.

SQLCODE=100 Processing terminates - data base error.

Issue a ROLL CALL and display error screen.

SQLCODE>0 and -= 100 Processing continues - DB2 warning.

Redisplay the transaction display screen with the DATA MODIFIED SUCCESSFULLY completion message.

# CDELETE - CURSOR DELETE FOR SINGLE ROW

CURSOR DELETE is the standard IMSADF II SQL statement used to delete a single row from a DB2 Table.

The CURSOR DELETE function deletes a row that has been previously SELECTed.

The row to be deleted is fetched into an IMSADF II I/O area.

If the IMSADF II data compare (DATACOMP) function is specified for the Table, the row fetched into the IMSADF II I/O area is compared with a copy of the row saved in the SPA when the row is initially fetched. If data compare is only specified for a single Column (DCFIELD), then only

that Column is saved in the SPA when the row is initially fetched and only that Column is compared.

If data compare fails and no previous data base updates, (DL/I or DB2), have occurred within this sync point, the transaction terminates with an error message. A ROLL CALL is issued if previous data base updates have occurred.

If data compare is successful, or the data compare function is not specified for this Table, IMSADF II issues the DELETE SQL call using the WHERE CURRENT OF CURSOR clause, pointing at the row in the SPA.

The DB2 SQL return codes associated with the CDELETE call are as follows:

**SQLCODE=0** Processing continues.

Redisplay the transaction display screen with the DATA DELETED SUCCESSFULLY completion message.

**SQLCODE(0** Processing terminates - DB2 error.

Display the PROCESSING ERROR message with the SQLCODE mapped into the message. Redisplay the primary option menu screen, if no previous data base updates. Issue an IMS/VS ROLL CALL if previous data base updates have occurred.

SQLCODE=100 Processing terminates - data base error.

Issue a ROLL CALL and display error screen.

SQLCODE>0 and -= 100 Processing continues - DB2 warning.

Redisplay the transaction display screen with the DATA DELETED SUCCESSFULLY completion message.

### INSERT - INSERT OF A SINGLE ROW

INSERT is the standard IMSADF II SQL statement used to insert a single row into a DB2 Table.

All Columns defined as eligible for insert (SQLISRT=YES) are included in the VALUES clause of the SQL INSERT statement.

The DB2 SQL return codes associated with the INSERT call are as follows:

SQLCODE=0 Processing continues.

Redisplay the transaction display screen with the DATA ADDED SUCCESSFULLY completion message.

**SQLCODE(0** Processing terminates - DB2 error.

Display the PROCESSING ERROR message with the SQLCODE mapped into the message. Redisplay the primary option menu screen, if no previous data base updates. If previous data base updates, issue an IMS/VS ROLL CALL.

**SQLCODE>0** and  $\neg$ = 100 Processing continues - DB2 warning.

Redisplay the transaction display screen with the DATA ADDED SUCCESSFULLY completion message.

### Notes:

- An IMS/VS ROLL CALL is issued if a DL/I or SQL data base update call fails and previous updates have occurred within this sync point.
- 2. If SELECTed Columns are truncated, SQLWARNO and SQLWARN1 set to 'W' by DB2, IMSADF II continues processing. The truncated data is displayed as returned. It is the user's responsibility to test for truncation and to determine if an error condition exists. Standard Audit operations have been provided to test SQLWARN and to test

individual Columns for truncation. If truncation does occur the user must determine if transaction logic (for example, suppress data base updates) should be altered.

- 3. If the IMSADF II data compare (DATACOMP) function is specified, and only a single Column (DCFIELD) is being compared, that Column should not be defined as being eligible for NULL value. When the DCFIELD is compared only the data area is compared. The associated indicator variable is not compared.
- Native SQL (static and dynamic) calls can also be issued by an Audit Exit or Special Processing Routine.

#### RULE AND SPA WORKAREA HANDLING

The Table Handler Rule is loaded and invoked in the same manner as the current DL/I Segment Handler Rules and is eligible for the PRELOAD rule and Composite rules load module.

The requesting transaction driver passes the function, host variables for the INTO and WHERE clauses, indicator variables, the SQL communication area (SQLCA), and the address of DSNHLI, the language interface entry point. In turn, the Table Handler Rule issues the appropriate SQL calls and indicates the result.

The DB2 Tables/Views, defined to an IMSADF II transaction, are allocated space in the SPA workarea in the same manner as current DL/I and pseudo segments.

#### EXIT PROCESSING

A SQLHNDLR Call function is available to Audit exits and Special Processing routines, similar in structure to the SEGHNDLR function available for DL/I segments. A SQLHNDLR Call issued by the COBOL, PL/I or Assembler exit passes the following parameters to the Table Handler Rule:

- Table ID
- Label of function to Execute
- Host Variables to describe the search values optional
- I/O area optional
- SQLCA optional

In PL/I:

CALL SQLHNDLR(ID, LABEL, {KEY, AREA, SQLCA});

In COBOL:

CALL 'SQLHNDLR' USING ID, LABEL, {KEY, AREA, SQLCA}.

## Note:

- The IMSADF II MAPPER function does not map indicator variables into a user's I/O area. The IMSADF II COPYSEG function maps the entire row, including indicator variables into a user's I/O area.
- The MAPPER function converts TYPE=FLOAT Columns to alphanumeric and alphanumeric to FLOAT. The MAPPER function calculates the current length of a TYPE=VARCHAR Column based on the length of the source field when modified data is mapped into the SPA.
- 3. Audit exits or Special processing routines can also issue native SQL calls. Optionally, the exit can then map the resulting row(s) into the SPA workarea, using the MAPPER or COPYSEG function. The row is then accessible for other IMSADF II functions.
- The DL/I Exit available before and after each DL/I call is not available for SQL calls.

# **CHAPTER 5. INSTALLATION**

There is one optional step in the IMSADF II installation process dealing with additional DB2 support. This optional installation step must be executed, if you choose to use the IMSADF II supplied RGLGEN Utility to extract Rules Generator source from the DB2 catalog.

The RGLGEN Utility is linked with the DB2 TSO Language Interface Module, DSNELI by this step.

Refer to the RGLGEN Utility chapter for details on installing and using this utility.

## SAMPLE PROBLEM

After the IMSADF II installation is completed, the following steps must also be completed before the IMSADF II DB2 sample problem can be executed.

The sample problem is composed of three IMSADF II transactions that are defined in detail in appendixes B and C.

#### 1. Create the IMSADF II Static Rules.

The Rules Generator source statements required to create all the IMSADF II static rules are contained in the IMSADF.RULES.SOURCE library, member RGLDB2S. The three required screen image source members are contained in the IMSADF.ADFIMG library, members EM, EX, and ES.

### Note:

- The DB2 Table processed by the three sample transactions is the DB2 sample Employee Table, 'DSN8.TEMPL'. In order to access a private copy of this table, change the SQLNAME operand on the two Rules Generator TABLE statements to the new DB2 Table name.
- The Rules Generator Table and Column source statements for the TABLE ID=EM can also be extracted from the DB2 Catalog. The RGLGEN Utility should be executed and the created Table and Column statements should be compared with the Table and Column statements in source member RGLDB2S.
- The information contained on the SYSTEM statement in source member RGLDB2S establishes that the three DB2 sample transactions are clustered under IMS/VS transaction SAMPTOR. The associated IMSADF II PROJECT/GROUP is ZZ. This is the same IMS/VS transaction and PROJECT/GROUP that the standard IMSADF II sample problem uses.
- The last two GENERATE statements in source member RGLDB2S can be commented out if the standard IMSADF II sample problem has been defined.

## 2. Create the IMSADF II Dynamic Rules.

- Define additional transaction logic required to successfully execute the IMSADF II DB2 sample transactions. Appendix B contains samples of the required High Level Audit Language code. This additional transaction logic should be added to the Audit data base. No source has been provided.
- Optionally define transaction Help information. Transaction help can be made available for all conversational transactions. Appendix B contains a sample of transaction Help for the 'EM' transaction. No source is provided.

- Define additional error messages. The sample High Level Audit Language for transaction 'ES' references error message 1000. This message should be added to the Message data base.
- The three sample DB2 transactions 'EM', 'EX', and 'ES' must be added to the ZZ Project/Group profile in the SIGNON/PROFILE data base.

## Create the DB2 Application Plan.

Part of the output created by the Rules Generator are two DB2 DBRMs. The DB2 BIND process is invoked to combine these DBRMs into a DB2 Application Plan. The name of the Application Plan must be the same as the IMS/VS transaction and PSB, (that is, SAMPTOR). The names of the DBRMs that must be specified when the BIND process is invoked are SAMPSEM, and SAMPSES.

Once these additional steps have been completed the IMSADF II DB2 sample problem becomes a part of the standard IMSADF II sample problem.

## DB2 APPLICATION PLAN RESTRICTION

IMSADF II Version 2 Release 2, in the CICS/OS/VS environment, has the following restriction - all DB2 transactions for an IMSADF II SYSID must be in the same application plan. This is accomplished by specifying the same cluster code (i.e., PGMID= and SOMTX= operands) to the Rules Generator.

If DB2 Release 1 is used, the number of DB2 transactions per SYSID will be limited by the total application plan size. This is because plans are stored and loaded as a single unit of actual code. There is code in the plan for each SQL statement, and plan size is dependent on the number of tables referenced and the complexity of the user SQL statements.

However, in DB2 Release 2, because of changes in the locking mechanism and application plan segmentation, the above IMSADF II CICS/05/VS restriction will still apply, but more DB2 transactions per SYSID may be used. Specifically, plans consist of more compact structures. Each SQL statement, or set of cursor-related statements, creates a separate control structure. Thus, virtual storage demands are relieved because each control structure is smaller than the DB2 Release 1 application plan. These control structures are loaded into virtual storage when the program first executes the SQL statement. In addition, the control structures are released from the Environmental Descriptor Manager (EDM) pool based on the RELEASE value specified during the BIND. This decreases demand for real storage and paging I/O related to EDM pool size.

## APPENDIX A. SAMPLE RULES GENERATOR SOURCE AND OUTPUT

This appendix contains Rules Generator source statements that define two IMSADF II transactions that access both DL/I and DB2 data bases. It also contains the Assembler Source statements output for the Table Handler Rule created by the Rules Generator. These source statements are used as input to the DB2 pre-compiler. The Rules Generator dynamically invokes the DB2 pre-compiler prior to invoking the Assembler and the Linkage Editor.

## RULES GENERATOR SOURCE STATEMENTS

```
****************************
×
   APPLICATION DEFINITION - DLI PARTS DATA BASE - PA SEGMENT
                                                            ×
                         DB2 DSN8 DATA BASE - EM TABLE
                                                            ×
SYSTEM
       SYSID=SAMP, DBID=PA,
                                            RULE ID CHARS
                                   FORCE TO ENGLISH
       USRLANG=E,
                                   DEFAULT SECONDARY OPTION CODE
       SOMTX=OR,
       PCBNO=1,
                                   PCB NUMBER FOR DATA BASE
       SHEADING='S A M P L E
                                            GENERAL HEADING
                             ROBLEM',
       SFORMAT=DASH,
                                            SCREEN FORMAT
                                            PROJECT GROUP
       PGROUP=ZZ
¥
   APPLICATION DEFINITION INPUT FOR PA ROOT SEGMENT
×
SEGMENT ID=PA, PARENT=0, NAME=PARTROOT, LENGTH=50, SKSEG=18
 FIELD ID=KEY, LENGTH=17, KEY=YES, NAME=PARTKEY, SNAME='PART NUMBER'
 FIELD ID=DESC, LENGTH=20, POS=27, SNAME='DESCRIPTION', REL=YES
×
×
             TD=FM
                                       TIME:
                                              00:04:29
                                                            ×
    TABLE:
                      DATE:
                             12/25/84
×
           NAME=DSN8.TEMPL
                                        MEMBER=SAMPTBEM
                                                            ×
TABLE
     ID=EM, TYPE=TBL, SQLNAME='DSN8.TEMPL', SQLIND=YES
COLUMN ID=0001, SQLNAME='EMPNO', SNAME='EMPNO',
      TYPE=C, LENGTH=006, SQLUPD=NO
COLUMN ID=0002, SQLNAME='FIRSTNME', SNAME='FIRSTNME',
      TYPE=V, LENGTH=012
COLUMN ID=0003, SQLNAME='MIDINIT', SNAME='MIDINIT',
      TYPE=C, LENGTH=001
COLUMN ID=0004, SQLNAME='LASTNAME', SNAME='LASTNAME',
      TYPE=V,LENGTH=015
COLUMN ID=0005, SQLNAME='WORKDEPT', SNAME='WORKDEPT',
      TYPE=C, LENGTH=003
COLUMN ID=0006, SQLNAME='PHONENO', SNAME='PHONENO',
      TYPE=C, LENGTH=004, SQLNULL=YES
COLUMN ID=0007, SQLNAME='HIREDATE', SNAME='HIREDATE',
      TYPE=P, LENGTH=004, SQLNULL=YES
COLUMN ID=0008, SQLNAME='JOBCODE', SNAME='JOBCODE',
      TYPE=P, LENGTH=002, SQLNULL=YES
COLUMN ID=0009, SQLNAME='EDUCLVL', SNAME='EDUCLVL',
TYPE=I,LENGTH=002,SQLNULL=YES
COLUMN ID=0010,SQLNAME='SEX',SNAME='SEX',
      TYPE=C, LENGTH=001, SQLNULL=YES
COLUMN ID=0011, SQLNAME='BRTHDATE', SNAME='BRTHDATE',
      TYPE=P, LENGTH=004, SQLNULL=YES
COLUMN ID=0012, SQLNAME='SALARY', SNAME='SALARY',
```

```
TYPE=P, LENGTH=005, DEC=02, SQLNULL=YES
×
* FIELD MERGE INFORMATION FOR 'EM' KEY SELECTION AND AUDITS
×
COLUMN
      ID=0001, KEY=YES, SNAME='EMPLOYEE SEARCH DATA', COL=01
      ID=0004, RELATED=YES, COL=16
COLUMN
      ID=0005, RELATED=YES, COL=33
COLUMN
COLUMN
      ID=0012, RELATED=YES, COL=43
* SEGMENT OVERRIDE INFORMATION FOR 'EM' KEY SELECTION
      OVERRIDE=ID, ID=EM, SKSEGS=15,
TABLE
                                      WORK',
      SKLEFT='EMPLOYEE
                          LAST
      SKLEFT='NUMBER
                                      DEPT',
                          NAME
      SKRIGHT='
                   SALARY'
* PSEUDO SEGMENT TO HOLD 'EM' KSELECT3 WHERE CLAUSE HOST VARIABLE
******************************
SEGMENT ID=P1, TYPE=PS
 FIELD ID=KS3, TYPE=C, LENGTH=09
 FIELD ID=EMP#, TYPE=C, LENGTH=06, REDEF=KS3
 FIELD ID=DEPT, TYPE=C, LENGTH=03, REDEF=KS3, OFFSET=6
¥
     GENERATE SEGMENT LAYOUT AND HANDLER RULES FOR SEGMENT - PA
    GENERATE SEGMENT LAYOUT RULE FOR PSEUDO SEGMENT - P1
¥
                                                        ¥
×
     GENERATE TABLE LAYOUT RULE FOR DB2 TABLE - EM
                                                        ¥
*****************************
GENERATE OPTIONS=(SEGL, SEGH), SEGMENT=PA
GENERATE OPTIONS=SEGL, SEGMENT=P1
GENERATE OPTIONS=TABL, TABLE=EM
×
×
    GENERATE A TABLE HANDLER RULE FOR TABLE - EM
                                                        ×
GENERATE OPTIONS=TABH, TABLES=EM, SQLCALL=(DSQLCALL, KSELECT2),
       SQLUSER=YES, ASMREQ=YES
              WHERE EMPNO >= :EMP#.P1 AND WORKDEPT = :DEPT.P1
KSELECT3 SELECT
            ORDER BY EMPNO ASC, WORKDEPT ASC
&SQLENDS
GENERATE CONVERSATIONAL INPUT TRANSACTION RULE AND SCREENS
GENERATE TRXID=EX,OPTIONS=CVALL,DBPATH=(PA,EM),TSEGS=(P1),
       TRXNAME='DLI-PART / DB2-EMPLOYEE', DATACOMP=(EM),
       DEVNAME=(2,A3,A4),
       DEVCHRS=(0,0,0),
       DEVTYPE=(2,7,4),SPOS=SIMAGE
'D B 2 'S A M P L E
                               'PROBLEM
&=1
&MODE
                      TRANSACTION: 'DLI PART / 'DB2 EMPLOYEE
OPTION: &OPT TRX: &TRAN KEY: &KEY
   &SYSMSG
2=1
  DLI SEGMENT
                PART NUMBER-----&5KEY.PA
                DESCRIPTION-----&5DESC.PA
&=2
  DB2 TABLE
                EMPLOYEE NUMBER-----&50001.EM
                FIRST NAME----- &50002.EM
                MIDDLE INITIAL----&50003.EM
```

```
LAST NAME------ &50004.EM
                 DEPARTMENT NUMBER----- $50005.EM
                 PHONE EXTENSION-----&50006.EM
                 DATE HIRED------&50007.EM
                 EDUCATION LEVEL----- &50009.EM
                 SALARY-----&50012.EM
                               3
& ×
                                       4
& × -
                             ---8--
                                     --6-
            ---8
                  --4-
                                           - 1
    ID
        *SLEN *VROW *VCOL *VMODE *ASTATUS*KSEL*CLR*XHL
& X
&:KEY.PA
&: DESC.PA
                                           G
&:0001.EM
                                        KΑ
                                           Р
&:0002.EM
                                           Y
                                           Y
&:0003.EM
&:0004.EM
&:0005.EM
&:0006.EM
&:0007.EM
                                           YYYYY
          6
&:0008.EM
&:0009.EM
&:0010.EM
&:0011.EM
          6
&:0012.EM
          10
& ENDS
*************************
                                                             ×
     GENERATE NONCONVERSATIONAL INPUT TRANSACTION RULE AND SCREENS
×
                                                             ¥
GENERATE TRXID=NX,OPTIONS=TPALL,DBPATH=(PA,EM),TSEGS=(P1),
       TRXNAME='DB2 EMPLOYEE TABLE', MODNAME=SAMPNM,
       DEVNAME=(2,A3,A4),
       DEVCHRS=(0,0,0),
       DEVTYPE=(2,7,4),SPOS=SIMAGE
'D B 2 'S A M P L E
                                  'PROBLEM
&=1
&MODE
                        TRANSACTION: 'DLI PART / 'DB2 EMPLOYEE
ACTION: & ACTION
                 TRX:&X
   &SYSMSG
  DLI SEGMENT
                 PART NUMBER-----&5KEY.PA
                 DESCRIPTION-----&5DESC.PA
                 EMPLOYEE NUMBER-----&50001.EMFIRST NAME-----&50002.EM
  DB2 TABLE
                 MIDDLE INITIAL ---- &50003.EM
                 DEPARTMENT NUMBER----&50005.EM
                 PHONE EXTENSION-----&50006.EM
                 DATE HIRED------&50007.EM
                 EDUCATION LEVEL-----&50009.EM
SEX-----&50010.EM
                 BIRTH DATE-----&50011.EM
                            -----&50012.EM
                 SALARY----
                              3
& *
              1
& × –
                        --1----8-----6--
& *
        *SLEN *VROW *VCOL
    ID
                        *VMODE *ASTATUS*KSEL*CLR*XHL
&:KEY.PA
&: DESC.PA
                                           G
&:0001.EM
&:0002.EM
                                           Y
&:0003.EM
&:0004.EM
&:0005.EM
&:0006.EM
&:0007.EM
                                           Ϋ́Υ
          6
&:0008.EM
          3
&:0009.EM
          5
```

Appendix A. Sample Rules Generator Source and Output A-3

```
&:0010.EM
&:0011.EM
         6
         10
&:0012.EM
& ENDS
***********************
    GENERATE SECONDARY OPTION MENU
GENERATE OPTIONS=SOM
LINK CONVERSATIONAL AND NONCONVERSATIONAL DRIVERS
                                                      ¥
GENERATE OPTION=STLE, PGMID=OR
GENERATE OPTION=NCLE, PGMID=OR
*** END OF DATA ***
TABLE HANDLER GENERATED ASSEMBLER SOURCE STATEMENTS
       TITLE 'TABLE HANDLER FOR IMSADF II TABLE ID -EM, SYSID -SAMP'
SEM
SAMPSEM
      CSECT
       SPACE 2
MODULE NAME: SAMPSEM
* DESCRIPTIVE NAME: TABLE HANDLER FOR TABLE ID -EM, SYSID -SAMP
×
 STATUS: GENERATED BY IMSADF II VERSION 2 RELEASE 1
 FUNCTION: TO ISSUE SQL CALLS FOR DB2 TABLES DEFINED TO IMSADF
×
 MODULE TYPE:
             CSECT
×
   PROCESSOR:
             DB2 PREPROCESSOR AND ASSEMBLER
   ATTRIBUTES:
             SERIALLY REUSABLE
 INPUT: QCONTROL TABLE
          SQLFUNC
                 ADDRESS
          IOAREA
                 ADDRESS
          KEYS
                 ADDRESS
          SQLCA
                 ADDRESS
          SQLCA-WS ADDRESS
         DSNHLI
                 ADDRESS
 OUTPUT:
    COMPLETED SQL CALL
    RETURN CODE (REGISTER 15)
 EXTERNAL REFERENCES:
   ROUTINES:
               DSNHLI
               TABLE I/O AREA
                           (DATA AND INDICATOR VARIABLES)
   DATA AREAS:
               SEARCH VARIABLES (KEYS)
   CONTROL BLOCKS: SQLCA
SPACE 2
R<sub>0</sub>
       EQU
       EQU
R1
           1
                            SQL FUNCTION TO BE PERFORMED
       EQU
                            TABLE IOAREA
TABLE IOAREA PLUS 4096
R3
       EQU
       EQU
           4
R4
R5
       EQU
                            SEARCH VARIABLES (KEYS)
```

```
R6
          EQU
                6
                                        SQLCA ADDRESS
          EQU
R7
                                        SQLDA ADDRESS
          EQŪ
R8
                8
                                        DSNHLI ADDRESS
R 9
          EQU
                                        BASE
                                        BASE
R10
          EQU
                10
R11
          EQU
                11
                                        BASE
          EQU
R12
                12
                                        BASE
                                        SAVE AREA
R13
          EQU
                13
R14
          EQU
                14
                                        RETURN ADDRESS
          EQU
R15
                15
                C'W'
WARNING
          EQU
RC00
          EQU
                0
RC08
          EQU
                8
RC21
          EQU
                21
RC22
          EQU
                22
RC23
          EQU
                23
RC24
          EQU
          EJECT
* TABLE
        EM IOAREA DSEC FOR HOST VARIABLES
         DSECT
SAMPEMO
AEM0001$ DS
                CL006
                H, CL 012
AEM0002$ DS
AEM0003$
         DS
                CL001
AEM0004$ DS
                H, CL 015
AEM0005$ DS
                CL003
AEM0006$
         DS
                CL004
                PL004'99999999
AEM0007$ DC
                PL00219991
AEM0008$ DC
AEM0009$
         DS
AEM0010$ DS
                CL001
                PL004 99999999
AEM0011$ DC
AEM0012$ DC
                PL005'9999999.99'
* TABLE EM INDICATOR VARIABLES FOR HOST VARIABLES
          DS
          DS
                Н
          DS
          DS
                Н
          DS
AEM0006a
         DS
                Н
AEM0007a
         DS
                Н
68000M3A
         DS
AEM0009a
         DS
                Н
AEM0010a
         DS
                Н
AEM0011a DS
                Н
AEM0012a
         DS
* SEARCH VALUES FOR TABLE EM
         DSECT
SAMPEMK
* USER SEARCH VALUES FOR USER LABEL - KSELECT3

APIEMB#7 77
AP1EMP#3 DS
                CL006
AP1DEPT3
         DS
                CL003
          EJECT
SAMPSEM
          CSECT
          USING
                SAMPSEM, R15
                                        TEMP BASE IN R15.
                                       BRANCH AROUND ID.
                SQLSTART
          В
                AL1(SQLSTART-*-1), C'SAMPEM &SYSDATE &SYSTIME'
          DC
SQLSTART
         DS
                0 H
          STM
                R14,R12,12(R13)
                                        SAVE CALLERS REGS.
                R14, SQLSAVE
                                        PICK UP SAVE AREA ADDR.
          LA
                                       SET FWD PTR.
SET BKWD PTR.
                R14,8(,R13)
          ST
          ST
                R13,4(,R14)
                                        R13 TO SAVE AREA.
          LR
                R13,R14
          LR
                R12,R15
          DROP
                R15
          SPACE
          USING SAMPSEM, R12
          SPACE
                                        INDICATE VALID FUNCTION
                R15,RC00
          LA
                R2,R3,0(R1)
          LM
                                        PARAMETER ADDRESSES
                                        PARAMETER ADDRESSES
          LM
                R5,R8,8(R1)
          LR
                R4,R3
                                        2ND BASE REG FOR TABLE IOAREA
                                        STARTING ADDRESS FOR 2ND BASE REG
                R4, = A(4096)
          Α
```

Appendix A. Sample Rules Generator Source and Output A-5

```
R15, = V(ADSNHLI)
                                  GET ADDRESS OF ADSNHLI
        ST
                                  SAVE DSNHLI ADDRESS
              R8,0(,R15)
×
×
        LOCATE REQUESTED FUNCTION
LOOP THROUGH BRANCH TABLE
              R9, BRANCHT
        LA
                                  ADDR OF SQL ROUTINE
LOOP1
              R10,8(R9)
        CLC
              0(8,R9),0(R2)
                                  FUNCTION TO BE PERFORMED
                                  EXECUTE SQL CALL
GET NEXT ENTRY
        BER
              R10
              R9,12(R9)
        LA
        CLC
              0(8,R9),=C'FFFFFFFF'
                                  LAST ENTRY
        BNE
              LOOP1
                                  NOT THE LAST - CONTINUE SEARCH
                                  INDICATE FUNCTION NOT VALID
        LA
              R15,RC08
                                  RESTORE CALLERS R13
RETURN
              R13,4(,R13)
        LM
              R0,R12,20(R13)
                                  RESTORE CALLERS RO-R12
              R14,12(R13)
                                  GET RETURN POINT
        BR
              R14
                                    & RETURN
        USING
             SAMPEMO, R3
                                  SQL TABLE IOAREA
                                  2ND BASE REG FOR TABLE IOAREA
SQL SEARCH VALUES - ASSUME STANDARD
             SAMPEM0+4096,R4
        USING
        USING
              SAMPEMK, R5
                                  SQLCA
        USING SQLCAD, R6
        USING SQLDSECT, R7
                                  SQLCA EXTENSION
        SPACE
              C'SEMSAVE '
        DC
                                  ID TO TABLE HANDLER RULE
                                  SAVE AREA
SQLSAVE
              18A(0)
        DC
        EJECT
×
×
        BRANCH TABLE
BRANCHT
        DS
              0 D
                                  BRANCH TABLE
              C'CSELECTO', A(CSELECTO)
        DC
                                     SEQUENTIAL SELECT WITH CURSOR
                                     SEQUENTIAL SELECT CLOSE CURSOR
        DC
              C'CSELECTC', A(CSELECTC)
              C'INSERT
                       ',A(INSERT)
                                      INSERT SINGLE ROW
        DC
              C'CUPDATEO', A(CUPDATEO)
C'CUPDATEU', A(CUPDATEU)
        DC
                                     OPEN CURSOR FOR UPDATE (1 ROW)
                                     UPDATE FOR UPDATE CURSOR
        DC
              C'CUPDATEC', A(CUPDATEC)
        DC
                                     CLOSE UPDATE CURSOR
              C'CDELETEO', A(CDELETEO)
C'CDELETED', A(CDELETED)
C'CDELETEC', A(CDELETEC)
                                     OPEN CURSOR FOR DELETE (1 ROW)
        DC
                                     DELETE FOR DELETE CURSOR
        DC
                                     CLOSE DELETE CURSOR
        DC
        DC
              C'KSELEC10', A(KSELEC10)
                                     SEQUENTIAL SELECT WITH CURSOR
              C'KSELECIF', A(KSELECIF)
C'KSELECIC', A(KSELECIC)
        DC
                                     FETCH WITHIN KSELECT CURSOR
                                     CLOSE KSELECT CURSOR
        DC
              C'KSELEC20', A(KSELEC20)
        DC
                                     SEQUENTIAL SELECT WITH CURSOR
              C'KSELEC2F', A(KSELEC2F)
C'KSELEC2C', A(KSELEC2C)
        DC
                                     FETCH WITHIN KSELECT CURSOR
                                     CLOSE KSELECT CURSOR
        DC
              C'RSELEC30', A(KSELEC30)
        DC
                                     LABEL FOR USER KSELECT OPEN
              C'KSELEC3F', A(KSELEC3F)
        DC
                                     LABEL FOR USER KSELECT FETCH
              C'KSELEC3C', A(KSELEC3C)
        DC
                                     LABEL FOR USER KSELECT CLOSE
              C'FFFFFFFF,A(0)
                                  END OF BRANCH TABLE FLAG
        DC
        SPACE
SC100
        DC
              F'100'
        EJECT
×
        CSELECTO FOR TABLE EM
CSELECTO EQU
        BALR
             R11,0
        USING *,R11
        USING *+4095,R10
        USING *+8190,R9
        USING
             *+12285,R8
        Ι Δ
              R10,4095(R11)
              R9,4095(R10)
        LA
              R8,4095(R9)
        LA
        EXEC
              SQL
                                                                  x
              DECLARE CSELECT
                              CURSOR FOR
              SELECT
              EMPNO
```

```
FIRSTNME
                                                             MIDINIT
             LASTNAME
             WORKDEPT
             PHONENO
             HIREDATE
             JOBCODE
             EDUCLVL
             SEX
             BRTHDATE
             SALARY
             FROM
             DSN8.TEMPL
             WHERE
             EMPNO
             =: AEM00011
                                                              X
       EXEC
             SQL
             OPEN CSELECT
R14,15,SQLCODE
        ICM
       BM
CLC
BE
             RETURN
                               SQLCODE < 0
             SQLCODE, SC100
             RETURN
                               SQLCODE = 100
             SQL
FETCH CSELECT
        EXEC
                                                             INTO
             :AEM0001$
             :AEM0002$
             :AEM0003$
             :AEM0004$
             :AEM0005$
             :AEM0006$:AEM0006a
:AEM0007$:AEM0007a
             :AEM0008$:AEM0008a
             :AEM0009$:AEM0009a
             :AEM0010$:AEM0010a
             :AEM0011$:AEM0011a
             :AEM0012$:AEM0012a
             R15, RC21
                               SELECT/FETCH FUNCTION
       LA
             RETURN
       В
       DROP
             R8
       DROP
             R 9
       DROP
             R10
       DROP
             R11
       LTORG
        EJECT
×
                                                             ×
×
       CSELECTC FOR TABLE EM
                                                             ×
×
************************
CSELECTC EQU
       BALR
             R11,0
       USING *,R11
USING *+409
            *+4095,R10
       USING
            *+8190,R9
            *+12285,R8
R10,4095(R11)
       USING
       LA
       LA
             R9,4095(R10)
             R8,4095(R9)
       LA
       EXEC
                                                              X
             SQL
             CLOSE CSELECT
       В
             RETURN
       DROP
             R8
       DROP
             R9
       DROP
             R10
       DROP
             R11
       LTORG
        EJECT
×
                                                             ×
×
       INSERT
               FOR TABLE EM
                                                             ×
EQU
       INSERT
```

```
BALR R11,0
USING *,R11
        USING *+4095,R10
        USING *+8190,R9
        USING *+12285,R8
              R10,4095(R11)
        LA
              R9,4095(R10)
        LA
        LA
              R8,4095(R9)
        EXEC
              SQL
                                                                   *************************
              INSERT INTO
              DSN8.TEMPL
              EMPNO
              FIRSTNME
              MIDINIT
              LASTNAME
              WORKDEPT
              PHONENO
              HIREDATE
              JOBCODE
              EDUCLVL
              SEX
              BRTHDATE
              SALARY
              VALUES (
              : AEM0001$
              :AEM0002$
              :AEM0003$
              :AEM0004$
              :AEM0005$
              :AEM0006$:AEM0006a
              :AEM0007$:AEM0007a
              :AEM0008$:AEM0008a
              :AEM0009$:AEM0009a
              :AEM0010$:AEM0010a
              :AEM0011$:AEM0011a
              :AEM0012$:AEM0012a
        В
              RETURN
        DROP
              R8
        DROP
              R9
        DROP
              R10
        DROP
              R11
        LTORG
        EJECT
¥
        CUPDATEO FOR TABLE EM
                                                                   ×
CUPDATED EQU
              ×
        BALR
              R11,0
        USING *,R11
        USING *+4095,R10
        USING *+8190,R9
        USING *+12285,R8
LA R10,4095(R11)
        LA
              R9,4095(R10)
        LA
              R8,4095(R9)
        EXEC
              SQL
                                                                    DECLARE CUPDATE CURSOR FOR
              SELECT
              EMPNO
              FIRSTNME
              MIDINIT
              LASTNAME
              WORKDEPT
              PHONENO
              HIREDATE
              JOBCODE
              EDUCLVL
              SEX
              BRTHDATE
```

```
SALARY
                                                                     XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
              FROM
              DSN8.TEMPL
              WHERE
              EMPNO
              =: AEM00011
              FOR UPDATE OF
              FIRSTNME
              MIDINIT
              LASTNAME
              WORKDEPT
              PHONENO
              HIREDATE
               JOBCODE
              EDUCL VL
              SEX
BRTHDATE
              SALARY
                                                                     X
         EXEC
              SQL
              OPEN CUPDATE
R14,15,SQLCODE
         ICM
         BM
              RETURN
                                   SQLCODE < 0
        CLC
BE
              SQLCODE, SC100
              RETURN
                                   SQLCODE = 100
         EXEC
              SQL
                                                                    FETCH CUPDATE
              INTO
              :AEM0001$
              :AEM0002$
              :AEM0003$
              :AEM0004$
              :AEM0005$
              :AEM0006$:AEM0006a
              :AEM0007$:AEM0007a
              :AEM0008$:AEM0008a
              :AEM0009$:AEM0009a
              :AEM0010$:AEM0010a
              :AEM0011$:AEM0011a
              :AEM0012$:AEM0012a
        В
              RETURN
        DROP
              R8
        DROP
              R9
        DROP
              R10
        DROP
              R11
        LTORG
        EJECT
×
×
                                                                    ×
        CUPDATEU FOR TABLE EM
                                                                    ×
×
                                                                    ¥
CUPDATEU EQU
        BALR
              R11,0
        USING
              *,R11
        USING *+4095,R10
              *+8190,R9
        USING
              *+12285,R8
R10,4095(R11)
        USING
        LA
        LA
              R9,4095(R10)
        LA
EXEC
              R8,4095(R9)
              SQL
                                                                    UPDATE
              DSN8.TEMPL
              SET
              FIRSTNME
              =: AEM0002$
              MIDINIT
              =:AEM0003$
              LASTNAME
              =:AEM0004$
              WORKDEPT
              =: AEM0005$
              PHONENO
              =: AEM0006$: AEM0006a
```

```
HIREDATE
            =: AEM0007$: AEM0007a
            JOBCODE
            =: AEM0008$: AEM0008a
            EDUCLVL
            =: AEM0009$: AEM0009a
            SEX
            =: AEM0010$: AEM0010a
            BRTHDATE
            =: AEM0011$: AEM0011a
            SALARY
            =: AEM0012$: AEM0012a
            WHERE CURRENT OF CUPDATE
            R15, RC22
       LA
                             UPDATE FUNCTION RETURN CODE
            RETURN
       B
       DROP
            R8
       DROP
            R9
       DROP
            R10
       DROP
            R11
       LTORG
       EJECT
¥
×
       CUPDATEC FOR TABLE EM
                                                        ×
                                                        ¥
CUPDATEC EQU
       BALR
           R11,0
       USING *,R11
       USING *+4095,R10
       USING *+8190,R9
       USING *+12285,R8
            R10,4095(R11)
       LA
            R9,4095(R10)
       LA
       LA
            R8,4095(R9)
       EXEC
            SQL
                                                         X
            CLOSE CUPDATE
       В
            RETURN
       DROP
            R8
       DROP
            R 9
       DROP
            R10
       DROP
            R11
       LTORG
       EJECT
×
       CDELETEO FOR TABLE EM
                                                        ¥
CDELETEO EQU
       BALR
           R11,0
       USING *,R11
       USING *+4095,R10
       USING *+8190,R9
       USING *+12285,R8
       LA
            R10,4095(R11)
       LA
            R9,4095(R10)
       LA
            R8,4095(R9)
       EXEC
            SQL
                                                         DECLARE CDELETE CURSOR FOR
            SELECT
            EMPNO
           FIRSTNME
           MIDINIT
            LASTNAME
           WORKDEPT
           PHONENO
            HIREDATE
            JOBCODE
            EDUCLVL
            SEX
           BRTHDATE
            SALARY
           FROM
```

```
DSN8.TEMPL
                                                             XXX
            WHERE
            EMPNO
             =: AEM00011
       EXEC
                                                            X
            SQL
             OPEN CDELETE
            R14,15,SQLCODE
       ICM
             RETURN
                               SQLCODE < 0
       ΒM
       CLC
             SQLCODE, SC100
                               SQLCODE = 100
       ΒE
             RETURN
       EXEC
            SQL
                                                            XXXXXXXXXXXX
             FETCH CDELETE
            INTO
             :AEM0001$
             :AEM0002$
             :AEM0003$
             :AEM0004$
             :AEM0005$
             :AEM0006$:AEM0006a
             :AEM0007$:AEM0007a
             :AEM0008$:AEM0008a
                                                           ,
             :AEM0009$:AEM0009a
             :AEM0010$:AEM0010@
             :AEM0011$:AEM0011a
             :AEM0012$:AEM0012a
       В
            RETURN
       DROP
            R8
       DROP
            R 9
       DROP
            R10
       DROP
            R11
       LTORG
       EJECT
×
       CDELETED FOR TABLE EM
                                                            ×
CDELETED EQU
       BALR
            R11,0
       USING *,R11
       USING *+4095,R10
       USING *+8190,R9
       USING *+12285,R8
            R10,4095(R11)
       LA
       LA
            R9,4095(R10)
       LA
            R8,4095(R9)
       EXEC
            SQL
                                                             XXXX
            DELETE
            FROM
            DSN8.TEMPL
WHERE CURRENT OF CDELETE
R15,RC24
DEL
                               DELETE FUNCTION RETURN CODE
       LA
            RETURN
       В
       DROP
            R8
       DROP
            R9
       DROP
            R10
       DROP
            R11
       LTORG
       EJECT
×
                                                            ×
       CDELETEC FOR TABLE EM
                                                            ×
                                                            ¥
CDELETEC EQU
       BALR
            R11,0
       USING *,R11
       USING *+4095,R10
       USING *+8190,R9
       USING *+12285,R8
LA R10,4095(R11)
       LA
            R9,4095(R10)
            R8,4095(R9)
       LA
       EXEC
            SQL
                                                             X
```

Appendix A. Sample Rules Generator Source and Output A-11

```
CLOSE CDELETE
       В
           RETURN
       DROP
           R8
       DROP
           R9
       DROP
           R10
       DROP
           R11
       LTORG
       EJECT
¥
×
       KSELEC10 FOR TABLE EM
                                                       ×
¥
KSELEC10 EQU
           R11,0
       BALR
       USING *,R11
       USING *+4095,R10
       USING *+8190,R9
       USING *+12285,R8
           R10,4095(R11)
       LA
           R9,4095(R10)
       LA
       LA
           R8,4095(R9)
       EXEC
           SQL
                                                       DECLARE KSELECT1 CURSOR FOR
           SELECT
           EMPNO
           FIRSTNME
           MIDINIT
           LASTNAME
           WORKDEPT
           PHONENO
           HIREDATE
           JOBCODE
           EDUCLVL
           SEX
           BRTHDATE
           SALARY
           FROM
           DSN8.TEMPL
           WHERE
           EMPNO
           >= :AEM00011
           ORDER BY
           EMPNO
                                                   ASC
       EXEC
           SQL
                                                       X
           OPEN KSELECT1
           RETURN
       DROP
           R8
       DROP
           R 9
       DROP
           R10
       DROP
           R11
       LTORG
       EJECT
×
                                                       ×
×
       KSELEC1F FOR TABLE EM
                                                       ×
×
KSELEC1F EQU
       BALR
           R11,0
       USING *,R11
       USING *+4095,R10
      USING *+8190,R9
USING *+12285,R8
           R10,4095(R11)
       LA
       LA
           R9,4095(R10)
           R8,4095(R9)
       LA
       EXEC
           SQL
                                                       XXXX
           FETCH KSELECT1
           INTO
           :AEM0001$
           :AEM0002$
```

```
:AEM0003$
                                                          XXXXXXXX
            :AEM0004$
            : AEM0005$
            :AEM0006$:AEM0006a
            :AEM0007$:AEM0007a
            :AEM0008$:AEM0008a
            :AEM0009$:AEM0009a
            :AEM0010$:AEM0010a
            :AEM0011$:AEM0011a
            :AEM0012$:AEM0012a
       R
            RETURN
       DROP
            R8
       DROP
            R9
       DROP
            R10
       DROP
            R11
       LTORG
       EJECT
×
×
                                                          ×
×
       KSELECIC FOR TABLE EM
KSELECIC EQU
       BALR
            R11,0
       USING *,R11
       USING *+4095,R10
       USING *+8190,R9
       USING *+12285,R8
       LA
            R10,4095(R11)
            R9,4095(R10)
R8,4095(R9)
       LA
       LA
                                                          X
       EXEC
            SQL
            CLOSE KSELECT1
       В
            RETURN
       DROP
            R8
            R9
       DROP
       DROP
            R10
       DROP
            R11
       LTORG
       EJECT
*************************
×
                                                          ×
×
       KSELEC20 FOR TABLE EM
×
                                                          ×
KSELEC20 EQU
            R11,0
       BALR
       USING *,R11
       USING *+4095,R10
       USING *+8190,R9
       USING *+12285,R8
            R10,4095(R11)
       LA
       LA
            R9,4095(R10)
            R8,4095(R9)
       LA
       EXEC
            SQL
                                                          DECLARE KSELECT2 CURSOR FOR
            SELECT
            EMPNO
            FIRSTNME
            MIDINIT
            LASTNAME
            WORKDEPT
            PHONENO
            HIREDATE
            JOBCODE
            EDUCLVL
            SEX
            BRTHDATE
            SALARY
            FROM
            DSN8.TEMPL
            WHERE
            EMPNO
```

Appendix A. Sample Rules Generator Source and Output A-13

```
LIKE : AEM00012 AND
                                                             XXXX
             EMPNO
             >= :AEM00011
             ORDER BY
                                                         ASC
             EMPNO
                                                             X
       EXEC
             SQL
             OPEN KSELECT2
             RETURN
       В
       DROP
             R8
       DROP
            R9
       DROP
            R10
       DROP
            R11
       LTORG
       EJECT
************************
                                                            ¥
×
×
       KSELEC2F FOR TABLE EM
                                                            ×
×
                                                            ¥
*************************
KSELEC2F EQU
       BALR
            R11,0
       USING *,R11
       USING *+4095,R10
       USING *+8190,R9
       USING *+12285,R8
             R10,4095(R11)
       LA
            R9,4095(R10)
       LA
             R8,4095(R9)
       LA
       EXEC
             SQL
                                                             XXXXXXXXXXXXX
             FETCH KSELECT2
             INTO
             :AEM0001$
             :AEM0002$
             :AEM0003$
             :AEM0004$
             :AEM0005$
             :AEM0006$:AEM0006a
             :AEM0007$:AEM0007a
             :AEM0008$:AEM0008a
             :AEM0009$:AEM0009a
             :AEM0010$:AEM0010a
             :AEM0011$:AEM0011a
             :AEM0012$:AEM0012a
       В
            RETURN
       DROP
            R8
       DROP
            R9
       DROP
            R10
       DROP
            R11
       LTORG
       EJECT
×
       KSELEC2C FOR TABLE EM
                                                            ¥
KSELEC2C EQU
       BALR
            R11,0
       USING *,R11
       USING *+4095,R10
       USING *+8190,R9
       USING *+12285,R8
            R10,4095(R11)
       LA
            R9,4095(R10)
       LΑ
       LA
            R8,4095(R9)
       EXEC
            SQL
                                                             X
             CLOSE KSELECT2
            RETURN
       B
       DROP
            R8
       DROP
            R9
       DROP
            R10
       DROP
            R11
       LTORG
```

```
EJECT
×
       KSELEC30 FOR TABLE EM
                                                          ×
                                                          ×
KSELEC30 EQU
       BALR
            R11,0
       USING *,R11
       USING *+4095,R10
       USING *+8190,R9
       USING *+12285,R8
LA R10,4095(R11)
       LA
            R9,4095(R10)
       LA
            R8,4095(R9)
       USING SAMPEMK3, R5
       EXEC
            SQL
                                                          ****
            DECLARE KSELECT3 CURSOR FOR
            SELECT
            EMPNO
            FIRSTNME
            MIDINIT
            LASTNAME
            WORKDEPT
            PHONENO
            HIREDATE
            JOBCODE
            EDUCLVL
            SEX
            BRTHDATE
            SALARY
            FROM
            DSN8.TEMPL
            WHERE EMPNO >= :AP1EMP#3 AND WORKDEPT = :AP1DEPT3
            ORDER BY EMPNO ASC, WORKDEPT ASC
                                                           X
       EXEC
            SQL
            OPEN KSELECT3
            RETURN
       В
       DROP
            R8
            R9
       DROP
       DROP
            R10
       DROP
            R11
       LTORG
       EJECT
×
×
       KSELEC3F FOR TABLE EM
                                                          ×
KSELEC3F EQU
       BALR
            R11,0
       USING *,R11
       USING *+4095,R10
       USING *+8190,R9
       USING *+12285,R8
            R10,4095(R11)
       LA
            R9,4095(R10)
       LA
            R8,4095(R9)
       LA
       USING
           SAMPEMK3, R5
            SQL
       EXEC
                                                          XXXXXXXXXX
            FETCH KSELECT3
            INTO
            :AEM0001$
            :AEM0002$
            :AEM0003$
            :AEM0004$
            :AEM0005$
            :AEM0006$:AEM0006a
            :AEM0007$:AEM0007a
            :AEM0008$:AEM0008a
            :AEM0009$:AEM0009a
                                                          XX
            :AEM0010$:AEM0010a
            :AEM0011$:AEM0011a
            :AEM0012$:AEM0012a
```

```
RETURN
          В
          DROP
                 R8
          DROP
                 R9
          DROP
                 R10
          DROP
                 R11
          LTORG
          EJECT
×
                                                                                 ×
          KSELEC3C FOR TABLE EM
×
                                                                                 ×
KSELEC3C EQU
                R11,0
          BALR
          USING *,R11
          USING *+4095,R10
          USING *+8190,R9
          USING *+12285,R8
                 R10,4095(R11)
          LA
                 R9,4095(R10)
          LA
          LA
                 R8,4095(R9)
          USING SAMPEMK3, R5
                                                                                  X
          EXEC
                 SQL
                 CLOSE KSELECT3
                 RETURN
          В
          DROP
                 R8
          DROP
                 R 9
          DROP
                 R10
          DROP
                 R11
          LTORG
          EJECT
SQLCAD
          DSECT
                SQL INCLUDE SQLCA
          EXEC
                                         DSNHLI INTERFACE - ADSNHLI CONTAINS
THE ADDRESS OF THE SINGLE COPY OF
DFSLI000 (ENTRY POINT - DSNHLI)
IN LOAD MODULE ????V50.
CSECT FOR DSNHLI (NOTHING ELSE)
×
×
MFC1EDSN CSECT
          DS
                 0 H
                                         TELL LKED ABOUT IT GET IN HERE BASE IS R15 TO FIND THE VCON
          ENTRY DSNHLI
DSNHLI
          EQU
          USING *,15
                                         LOCATE THE DSNHLI ADDRESS
FORGET R15, IT'S NOT USABLE NOW
GO TO DSNHLI AND RETURN TO
                 15, ADSNHLI
          DROP
                 15
                 15
          BR
                                         MAIN TABLE HANDLER RULE CSECT
          ENTRY ADSNHLI
                 F'0'
ADSNHLI
          DC
          END
```

## APPENDIX B. SPECIFICATION EXAMPLE

To demonstrate the potential use of IMSADF II accessing DB2 data bases, reference the following examples. Three transactions are defined using the DB2 distributed Employee Table (DSN8.TEMPL).

The first transaction 'EM' provides FETCH, UPDATE, INSERT, and DELETE functions for a row of the Employee Table.

Additionally, the 'EM' transaction provides several types of secondary key selection browsing against the Employee Table.

- all employees in the Table
- all employees in a requested work department in the Table
- all employees in the table that satisfy the LIKE PREDICATE entered, (that is, %000% or 000\_\_\_\_)

**Note:** All secondary key selection browse displays are ordered by the EMPNO Column in ascending sequence.

The second transaction 'ES' provides 3 simple queries on the Employee Table using the DB2 built in functions, COUNT, SUM, and AVG. Values are displayed for 3 derived Columns, COUNT of employees, SUM(SALARY), and AVG(SALARY) based on WORKDEPT, SEX or EDUCLVL.

The third transaction 'EX' demonstrates that both DL/I and DB2 data can be displayed and updated from the same transaction display screen. This transaction processes the Employee Table using the same Table Layout and Table Handler Rules defined in the 'EM' transaction.

Appendix C, "Sample Problem" on page C-1 contains the screen flow associated with the first two sample transactions, EM and ES.

# DB2 EMPLOYEE TABLE DEFINITION

Following is the DB2 Sample Problem Employee Table definition:

```
CREATE TABLE DSN8.TEMPL
     (EMPNO
                 CHAR(6),
                               NOT NULL,
                               NOT NULL,
NOT NULL,
      FIRSTNME
                 VARCHAR(12)
      MIDINIT
                 CHAR(1),
      LASTNAME
                 VARCHAR(15)
                               NOT NULL,
                 CHAR(3),
      WORKDEPT
                               NOT NULL,
      PHONENO
                 CHAR(4)
      HIREDATE
                DECIMAL(6),
      JOBCODE
                 DECIMAL(3),
      EDUCLVL
                 SMALLINT,
      SEX
                 CHAR(1),
      BRTHDATE DECIMAL(6),
      SALARY
                 DECIMAL(8,2)
  VALIDPROC DSN8EAV1
  EDITPROC
            DSN8EAE1
  IN DSN8DAPP.DSN8SEMP;
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX DSN8.XEMPL1
       ON DSN8.TEMPL
       (EMPNO ASC) CLUSTER;
CREATE INDEX DSN8.XEMPL2
       ON DSN8.TEMPL
       (WORKDEPT ASC);
```

To extract Rules Generator source statements from the DB2 catalog for the DSN8.TEMPL Table use the IMSADF II RGLGEN utility. Refer to the RGLGEN Utility chapter for complete details.

Enter the following information on the IADF RGLGEN GENERATION panel to invoke the RGLGEN Utility.

COMMAND ===> SCROLL ===> PAGE Available Commands: CAN Cancel LOC Locate a given member **RES** Reset SYSID ===> SAMP PGROUP ===> PG LEVEL: 1 DB2 Subsystem Name ===> DSN IMSADF II ADFCOLUMNID TABLE ===> Y (Y|N) ISPF Library: DB2 Plan Name ===> RGLGEN PROJECT ===> tsouser ===> adfdb2 GROUP ===> tabh TYPE Other partitioned Data Set: DATA SET NAME ===> Line Commands: Inn Insert, Dnn Delete, Rnn Repeat, Mnn Move, Cnn Copy Command Member Name DB2 Table or View Name IMSADF II Table ID '''' 'DSN8.TEMPL' EM 

Figure B-1. Rules Source from DB2 Catalog Panel

In this example the output from the RGLGEN Utility is stored as member SAMPTBEM in the specified partitioned data set 'TSOUSER.ADFDB2.TABH'. The optional SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID Table is used to create the IMSADF II Column ID's.

# **RULES GENERATOR INPUT**

The following represents the Rules Generator input stream used to define the three sample DB2 transactions.

**NOTE:** The Rules Generator source statements required to create the following sample DB2 transactions are supplied when IMSADF II is installed.

- The IMSADF.RULES.SOURCE library, member RGLDB2S contains the Rules Generator source.
- The IMSADF.ADFIMG library, members EM, ES, and EX contain the associated screen image source.
- The Rules Generator source statements for the Employee Table are included in the RGLDB2S source member. However, one of the purposes of this appendix is to demonstrate using the RGLGEN Utility. Therefore this appendix shows the source being included using the Rules Generator INCLUDE function.

The source extracted from the DB2 catalog is not complete. The FIELD MERGE and SEGMENT OVERRIDE functions of the Rules Generator are used to complete the definition of the DSN8.TEMPL Table.

```
¥
   APPLICATION DEFINITION - DLI PARTS DATA BASE - PA SEGMENT
                                  DATA BASE - EM TABLE
                                                              ¥
¥
                          DB2 DSN8
                                                               ¥
SYSTEM
        SYSID=SAMP, DBID=PA,
                                              RULE ID CHARS
                                     FORCE TO ENGLISH
        USRLANG=E,
        SOMTX=OR,
                                    DEFAULT SECONDARY OPTION CODE
        PCBN0=1,
                                    PCB NUMBER FOR DATA BASE
                                              GENERAL HEADING
                               ROBLEM',
        SHEADING='S A M P L E
        SFORMAT=DASH,
                                              SCREEN FORMAT
        PGROUP=77
                                              PROJECT GROUP
****************************
   APPLICATION DEFINITION INPUT FOR PA ROOT SEGMENT
                                                               ¥
SEGMENT ID=PA, PARENT=0, NAME=PARTROOT, LENGTH=50, SKSEG=18
 FIELD ID=KEY, LENGTH=17, KEY=YES, NAME=PARTKEY, SNAME='PART NUMBER'
 FIELD ID=DESC, LENGTH=20, POS=27, SNAME='DESCRIPTION', REL=YES
INCLUDE MEMBERS=(SAMPTBEM)
*** expansion follows
×
             TD=FM
                       DATE:
                              12/25/84
                                         TIME:
                                                00:04:29
                                                               ×
    TABLE:
                                          MEMBER=SAMPTBEM
×
           NAME=DSN8.TEMPL
                                                              ¥
ID=EM, TYPE=TBL, SQLNAME='DSN8.TEMPL', SQLIND=YES
TABLE
COLUMN ID=0001, SQLNAME='EMPNO', SNAME='EMPNO',
      TYPE=C, LENGTH=006, SQLUPD=NO
COLUMN ID=0002, SQLNAME='FIRSTNME', SNAME='FIRSTNME',
      TYPE=V,LENGTH=012
COLUMN ID=0003, SQLNAME='MIDINIT', SNAME='MIDINIT',
      TYPE=C, LENGTH=001
      ID=0004, SQLNAME='LASTNAME', SNAME='LASTNAME',
COLUMN
      TYPE=V, LENGTH=015
COLUMN ID=0005, SQLNAME='WORKDEPT', SNAME='WORKDEPT',
      TYPE=C, LENGTH=003
COLUMN ID=0006, SQLNAME='PHONENO', SNAME='PHONENO',
      TYPE=C,LENGTH=004,SQLNULL=YES
COLUMN ID=0007, SQLNAME='HIREDATE', SNAME='HIREDATE',
      TYPE=P,LENGTH=004,SQLNULL=YES
COLUMN ID=0008, SQLNAME='JOBCODE', SNAME='JOBCODE',
TYPE=P,LENGTH=002,SQLNULL=YES
COLUMN ID=0009,SQLNAME='EDUCLVL',SNAME='EDUCLVL',
      TYPE=I, LENGTH=002, SQLNULL=YES
COLUMN ID=0010, SQLNAME='SEX', SNAME='SEX',
      TYPE=C,LENGTH=001,SQLNULL=YES
COLUMN ID=0011, SQLNAME='BRTHDATE', SNAME='BRTHDATE',
      TYPE=P, LENGTH=004, SQLNULL=YES
COLUMN ID=0012, SQLNAME='SALARY', SNAME='SALARY',
      TYPE=P, LENGTH=005, DEC=02, SQLNULL=YES
*** expansion ends
 FIELD MERGE INFORMATION FOR 'EM' KEY SELECTION
COLUMN ID=0001, KEY=YES, SNAME='EMPLOYEE SEARCH DATA', COL=01
 COLUMN ID=0004, RELATED=YES, COL=16
                                  **related field on sks
 COLUMN ID=0005, RELATED=YES, COL=33
                                  **related field on sks
COLUMN ID=0012, RELATED=YES, COL=43
                                  **related field on sks
 SEGMENT OVERRIDE INFORMATION FOR 'EM' KEY SELECTION
TABLE
       OVERRIDE=ID, ID=EM, SKSEGS=15,
                                           WORK',
       SKLEFT='EMPLOYEE
                             LAST
       SKLEFT='NUMBER
                                           DEPT',
                             NAME
```

```
SKRIGHT='
                            SALARY'
  PSEUDO SEGMENT DEFINITION - P1
  IF the user defined secondary key selection KSELECT3 SQL function
  is specified, the fields in this pseudo segment represent the Host Variables defined in the KSELECT3 WHERE clause.
×
  A key audit is used to move values to these fields.
SEGMENT ID=P1, TYPE=PS
         ID=KS3, TYPE=C, LENGTH=09
 FIELD
         ID=EMP#, TYPE=C, LENGTH=06, REDEF=KS3
 FIELD
 FIELD
         ID=DEPT, TYPE=C, LENGTH=03, REDEF=KS3, OFFSET=6
×
  TABLE DEFINITION - ES
  This Table defines a VIEW of the DB2 Sample Employee Table (DSN8.TEMPL). The defined Columns are derived
×
  using DB2 functions.
×
  This Table is processed by the 'ES' transaction.
  demonstrates the use of USER defined SQL functions.
¥
  NOTE: This VIEW definition does not exist in the DB2
  catalog. The RGLGEN Utility cannot be used.
×
  Even though no key is required for processing this Table,
¥
  IMSADF II still requires that a key field be defined.
 SQLNULL=YES is specified for the derived Columns based on the SALARY Column because the SALARY Column in the
×
  DSN8.TEMPL Table is defined eligible for the NULL value.
TABLE
         ID=ES, TYPE=TBL, SQLNAME='DSN8.TEMPL', SQLIND=YES
 COLUMN ID=ECNT, TYPE=I, LENGTH=04, SQLNAME='COUNT(*)'
 COLUMN ID=SSAL, TYPE=P, LENGTH=07, DEC=2, SQLNAME='SUM(SALARY)',
         SQLNULL=YES
 COLUMN ID=ASAL, TYPE=P, LENGTH=05, DEC=2, SQLNAME='AVG(SALARY)',
         SQLNULL=YES
 FIELD
         ID=DKEY, TYPE=P, LENGTH=05, REDEF=ASAL, KEY=YES
¥
  PSEUDO SEGMENT DEFINITION - P2
¥
* The fields in this pseudo segment represent the Host Variables * required to process the 3 USER defined SQL WHERE clauses in
¥
  the ES Table Handler Rule.
×
 A process audit is used to trigger the USER defined SQL
  functions in the ES Table Handler Rule.
¥
SEGMENT ID=P2, TYPE=PS
 FIELD
         ID=DEPT, TYPE=C, LENGTH=03, AUDIT=YES
 FIELD
         ID=JOBC, TYPE=P, LENGTH=02, AUDIT=YES
 FIELD
         ID=EDUL, TYPE=I, LENGTH=02, AUDIT=YES
¥
      GENERATE SEGMENT LAYOUT AND HANDLER RULES FOR SEGMENT - PA
GENERATE SEGMENT LAYOUT RULE FOR PSEUDO SEGMENT - P1, P2
                                                                                  ×
¥
       GENERATE TABLE LAYOUT RULE FOR DB2 TABLE - EM, ES
GENERATE OPTIONS=(SEGL, SEGH), SEGMENT=PA
GENERATE OPTIONS=SEGL, SEGMENTS=(P1,P2)
GENERATE OPTIONS=TABL, TABLES=(EM, ES)
  The following GENERATE OPTION=TABH Builds a Table Handler Rule for Table ID 'EM'. One user defined SQL function is specified. The LABEL indicates it is to be used during Secondary Key
×
¥
  Selection browse.
¥
  THE SQLCALL operand implies that the following standard
```

IMSADF II Application Specification Guide for DB2

R-4

```
* IMSADF II SQL functions are included in the Table Handler Rule -
 (CSELECT, INSERT, CUPDATE, CDELETE, KSELECT1, and KSELECT2).
GENERATE OPTIONS=TABH, TABLES=EM, SQLCALL=(DSQLCALL, KSELECT2),
         SQLUSER=YES, ASMREQ=YES
SELECT WHERE EMPNO >= :EMP#.P1 AND WORKDEPT = :DEPT.P1
KSELECT3 SELECT
                ORDER BY EMPNO ASC, WORKDEPT ASC
&SQLENDS
* The following GENERATE OPTION=TABH builds a Table Handler Rule * for Table ID 'ES'. 3 USER defined SQL functions are specified.
* No standard IMSADF II SQL functions are defined for this Table.
GENERATE OPTIONS=TABH, TABLES=ES, SQLCALL=NONE, SQLUSER=YES, ASMREQ=YES DEPTSELC SELECT WHERE WORKDEPT = :DEPT.P2
JOBCSELC SELECT
                   WHERE JOBCODE = : JOBC.P2
                   WHERE EDUCLVL >= :EDUL.P2
EDULSELC SELECT
&SQLENDS
* The following GENERATE OPTION=CVALL builds a conversational
 Input Transaction Rule and MFS source for the Primary Key
* Selection and Transaction display screens for the EM
* Transaction.
GENERATE TRXID=EM,OPTIONS=CVALL,DBPATH=(EM),TSEGS=(P1),
         TRXNAME='DB2 EMPLOYEE TABLE',
         DEVNAME=(2,A3,A4),
         DEVCHRS=(0,0,0),
         DEVTYPE=(2,7,4),SPOS=SIMAGE
'D B 2 'S A M P L E
                                          'PROBLEM
&=1
 &MODE
                              TRANSACTION: 'DB2 'EMPLOYEE 'TABLE
 OPTION: &OPT TRX: &TRAN KEY: &KEY
    &SYSMSG
        EMPLOYEE NUMBER-----&50001.EM
&=1
        FIRST NAME------ &50002.EM
        MIDDLE INITIAL-----&50003.EM LAST NAME------&50004.EM
        DEPARTMENT NUMBER----&50005.EM
        PHONE EXTENSION-----&50006.EM
        DATE HIRED-----&50007.EM
        JOB CODE------&50008.EM
        EDUCATION LEVEL-----&50009.EM
        SEX-----&50010.EM
        SALARY-----&50012.EM
                        2
& *
                                3
& × -
           -2----8----4----1----8---
                                                6----5
& *
     ΙD
          *SLEN *VROW *VCOL *VMODE *ASTATUS*KSEL*CLR*XHL
&:0001.EM
                                                 KΑ
                                                     Ρ
&:0002.EM
&:0003.EM
                                                      Υ
&:0004.EM
                                                      Ý
&:0005.EM
&:0006.EM
&:0007.EM
&:0008.EM
&:0009.EM
            5
&:0010.EM
&:0011.EM
             6
&:0012.EM
             10
& ENDS
* The following GENERATE OPTION=CVALL builds a conversational
* Input Transaction Rule and MFS source for the Transaction
* display screen for the ES Transaction.
* The ES Transaction is defined without Key Select Functions.
GENERATE TRXID=ES,OPTIONS=CVALL,KEYSL=NO,TSEGS=(ES,P2),DTRAN=NO,
```

DKEY=NO, TRXNAME='DB2 EMPLOYEE STATISTICS',

```
DEVNAME=(2,A3,A4),
         DEVCHRS=(0,0,0),
         DEVTYPE=(2,7,4),SPOS=SIMAGE
'D B 2 'S A M P L E
                                       'PROBLEM
                      'EMPLOYEE 'STATISTICS
&=1
 OPTION: & OPT
    &SYSMSG
  COUNT OF EMPLOYEES
                            TOTAL SALARY
                                                 AVERAGE SALARY
                        &6SSAL.ES
       &6ECNT.ES
                                                &6ASAL.ES
  ENTER ONE OF THE FOLLOWING:
&=1
         WORK DEPARTMENT---: &4DEPT.P2
     BY
             0R
         JOB CODE (1 TO 60)-: &4JOBC.P2
             0R
         EDUCATION LEVEL---: &4EDUL.P2
         11 = LESS THAN HIGH SCHOOL
         12 = HIGH SCHOOL
         16 = COLLEGE DEGREE
18 = MASTERS DEGREE
         20 = P.H.D.
&×
                       2
                              3
                                              4
                                                   5
                                                       5
           1
                                     3
                1
          -2----8----4----1----8-----6----1---5
& ×
&¥
    ID
          *SLEN *VROW *VCOL *VMODE *ASTATUS*KSEL*CLR*XHL
&: ECNT.ES
&:SSAL.ES
                                                       U
&:ASAL.ES
&:DEPT.P2
                                                       R
&: JOBC.P2
                                                   R
                                                       R
&:EDUL.P2
                                                       R
&ENDS
  The following GENERATE OPTION=CVALL builds a conversational
  Input Transaction Rule and MFS source for the Primary Key
¥
  Selection and Transaction display screens for the EX
¥
 Transaction.
 This transaction allows both DL/I and DB2 data to be displayed
¥
  and updated from the same transaction display screen.
GENERATE TRXID=EX,OPTIONS=CVALL,DBPATH=(PA,EM),TSEGS=(P1),
TRXNAME='DLI-PART / DB2-EMPLOYEE',DATACOMP=(EM),
         DEVNAME=(2, A3, A4),
         DEVCHRS=(0,0,0),
         DEVTYPE=(2,7,4),SPOS=SIMAGE
'D B 2 'S A M P L E
                                        'PROBLEM
&=1
 &MODE
                            TRANSACTION: 'DLI PART / 'DB2 EMPLOYEE
 OPTION: &OPT TRX: &TRAN KEY: &KEY
    &SYSMSG
                    PART NUMBER-----&5KEY.PA
   DLI SEGMENT
                    DESCRIPTION-----&5DESC.PA
&=2
   DB2 TABLE
                    EMPLOYEE NUMBER-----&50001.EM
                    FIRST NAME------ &50002.EM
                    MIDDLE INITIAL-----&50003.EM
LAST NAME------&50004.EM
                    DEPARTMENT NUMBER----&50005.EM
                    PHONE EXTENSION-----&50006.EM
                    DATE HIRED------&50007.EM
                    BIRTH DATE------- $50011.EM
                    SALARY-----&50012.EM
                           3 3
& X
& × -
          -2----8----1---5
    ΙD
          *SLEN *VROW *VCOL *VMODE *ASTATUS*KSEL*CLR*XHL
& X
&:KEY.PA
&: DESC.PA
                                                   G
```

```
&:0001.EM
&:0002.EM
&:0003.EM
                                                          KA PYYYYYYYYYYYYYY
&:0004.EM
&:0005.EM
&:0006.EM
&:0007.EM
&:0008.EM
&:0009.EM
&:0010.EM
&:0011.EM
&:0012.EM
               10
&ENDS
* GENERATE the Secondary Option Menu Rule
GENERATE OPTIONS=SOM
* GENERATE the SIGNON screen and Primary Option Menu Rule
GENERATE OPTIONS=CVSYS
* GENERATE the Conversational Mini-Driver
GENERATE OPTIONS=STLE,PGMID=OR
```

#### TRANSACTION HELP FACILITY

The following is an example of the IMSADF II HELP facility for the EM transaction. The HELP facility is available in conversational processing, to describe the purpose and input requirements for the currently displayed screen. HELP is invoked through the entry of '?' in the OPTION field. The screen on which the '?' is entered will determine which help text will be retrieved and displayed.

This example will be displayed if a '?' were entered in the OPTION field on either the Primary or Secondary key selection screen for the EM transaction. The second page of this example will be displayed if the user presses the PF1 key.

\*FOLLOWING IS THE HELP DATA TO BE ENTERED IN THE MESSAGE DATA BASE \*REPRESENTED BY BATCH DRIVER INPUT MFC1B4HESAMPPEMA MFC1B4HTSAMPPEMa0001

FOR TRXID EM SAMPLE PROBLEM SELECTION SCRE HELP DB2 KEY SCREENS

PRIMARY KEY SELECTION

EMPLOYEE SEARCH DATA

ENTRY ACTION

WHERE N IS 0 to 9 - EMPLOYEE DATA IS ининии

DISPLAYED ON TRANSACTION DISPLAY
WHERE N IS 1 TO 5 NUMBERS - SECONDARY KEY
SELECTION WITH EMPLOYEES STARTING WITH NNNNN> OR <

THE PARTIAL KEY AND GREATER OR %

WHERE N IS 1 to 5 NUMBERS - SECONDARY KEY SELECTION WITH EMPLOYEES WITH THESE CORRECT

PARTIAL VALUES
WHERE D INVOKES USER DEFINED KSELECT3 -DNNN

D INDICATES DISPLAY ALL EMPLOYEES IN THE NNN DEPARTMENT ON THE SECONDARY KEY

SELECTION BROWSE SCREEN

PRESS PF1 TO DISPLAY NEXT PAGE \$\$

MFC1B4HTSAMPPEMa0002

F 0 R HELP TRXID SAMPLE PROBLEM D B 2

SECONDARY KEY SELECTION

THE SECONDARY KEY SELECTION SCREEN DISPLAYS EMPLOYEE INFORMATION. IN A TABULAR FORM. A SELECTION MAY BE MADE FROM THE CURRENT PAGE, THE NEXT PAGE MAY BE DISPLAYED, OR THE TRX AND KEY CAN BE CHANGED TO SWITCH TO A NEW TRANSACTION.

**EMPLOYEE** WORK SALARY LAST NUMBER NAME DEPT

NNN

#### HIGH LEVEL AUDIT LANGUAGE

The following are samples of High Level Audit Language required to execute the 'EM', 'ES' and 'EX' transactions.

#### EM and EX Transactions

Test to see if the User enters a 'D' in the first position of the Employee Number field, (SAEM0001). If he has then set up to invoke the USER defined KSELECT3 function.

\* HIGH LEVEL AUDIT LANGUAGE FOR THE DB2 EM AND EX TRANSACTIONS

```
SYSID = SAMP
XPANDLBLS = YES
AGROUP = YYYY
SEGID = EM
FIELD = 0001
* FIELD 0001 = Dx2 COLUMN EMPNO
KEY
         PRIMARY KEY AUDIT
×
 P 0
  IF SAEM0001 = NON$ 'D$$$$'
                                  TEST FOR D IN 1ST POSITION
×
      SAP1DEPT = SUBSTR SAEM00012 : 3
MOVE DEPT NUMBER TO PSEUDO SEGMENT
×
       SAP1EMP# = '000000'
       SPASQL = KSELECT3
×
                                  USE KSELECT3 FOR SEC KEY SEL
       SPAWHERE = SAP1KS3
×
                                  SET KSELECT3 HOST VARIABLES
  ENDIF
¥
×
         SECONDARY KEY AUDIT
×
  SAP1EMP# = SAEM0001
×
                                  SAVE FETCHED EMPNO FROM SEC KEY
×
                                  FOR REPOSITIONING OF NEXT SCREEN
```

#### ES Transaction

Invoke one of the three USER defined SQL functions defined in the ES Table Handler Rule based on the terminal input.

If the Work Department field is not blank then invoke the DEPTSELC function. If the Job Code field is not zero then invoke the JOBCSELC function. If the Education Level field is not zero then invoke the EDULSELC function.

HIGH LEVEL AUDIT LANGUAGE FOR THE DB2 ES TRANSACTION SYSID = SAMP XPANDLBLS = YES AGROUP = YYYY SEGID = P2 FIELD = DEPT **PROCESS** Ρ1 IF DEPT NE ' IF SQL DEPTSELC SAP2DEPT ES NOT OK IF SQLCODE = 100 SPAERMSG = 'EMPLOYEE STATS REQUEST COMPLETED - NO HITS' **EXIT** ELSE ERRORMSG = 1000 **ENDIF** ELSE SAP2JOBC = 0 SAP2EDUL = 0 **ENDIF** ENDIF FIELD = JOBC **PROCESS** F 1 IF JOBC NE 0 IF SQL JOBCSELC SAP2JOBC ES NOT OK IF SQLCODE = 100
 SPAERMSG = 'EMPLOYEE STATS REQUEST COMPLETED - NO HITS' EXIT ELSE ERRORMSG = 1000 **ENDIF** ELSE SAP2DEPT = ' SAP2EDUL = 0**ENDIF** ENDIF FIELD = EDUL **PROCESS** P1 IF EDUL NE 0 IF SQL EDULSELC SAP2EDUL ES NOT OK IF SQLCODE = 100
 SPAERMSG = 'EMPLOYEE STATS REQUEST COMPLETED - NO HITS' **EXIT ELSE** ERRORMSG = 1000 **ENDIF** ELSE

NOTE: Error message 1000 must be defined to the IMSADF II system.

SAP2DEPT = 'SAP2JOBC = 0

ENDIF ENDIF

#### THE BIND PROCESS

Prior to executing a DB2 transaction the associated Table Handler Rules must be defined to DB2 by creating an Application Plan.

The two Table Handler Rules defined in this example are shown here being BINDed into one DB2 Application Plan, (SAMPTOR). When IMSADF II transactions EM, EX, or ES are executed this DB2 Application Plan is used.

The following information to create the SAMPTOR Application Plan is supplied to the DB2I BIND Panel.

```
DSNEBP02
                                                   BIND
===>
ENTER THE DBRM LIBRARY NAME(S):
1 DBRMLIB1 ===> 'db2.dbrmlib'
3 DBRMLIB2 ===> 'imsadf.adfdbrm'
5 DBRMLIB3 ===>
                                                                                2 PASSWORD1 ===>
                                                                                4 PASSWORD2 ===>
6 PASSWORD3 ===>
7 DBRMLIB4 ===>
                                                                                8 PASSWORD4 ===>
ENTER THE MEMBER NAME(S) TO BE BOUND IN THIS PLAN:
            9 ===> sampsem 12 ===>
10 ===> sampses 13 ===>
                                                                 15 ===>
                                                                                              18 ===>
                                                                  16 ===>
17 ===>
                                                                                              19 ===>
            11 ===>
                                                                                              20 ===>
                                       14 ===>
SPECIFY OPTIONS AS DESIRED:
     PLAN NAME ....... ===> samptor
ACTION ON PLAN ..... ===> add
RETAIN EXECUTION AUTH. ===> yes
PLAN VALIDATION TIME ... ===> bind
                                                                    Enter desired plan name.
Enter ADD or REPLACE.
Enter YES to retain user list.
21
                                                                    Enter RUN or BIND.
Enter RR or CS.
Enter I, W, E, or C.
     ISOLATION LEVEL ..... ===> cs
MESSAGE LEVEL .... ===> i
      DB2 NAME ..... ===> dsn
                                                                    Enter DB2 subsystem name.
27
PRESS: ENTER to process
                                                                    HELP for more information
                                           END to exit
```

Figure B-2. DB2I Bind Panel Input

### APPENDIX C. SAMPLE PROBLEM

The sample problem shown here is derived from the Specification Example defined in the previous appendix.

This sample problem screen flow demonstrates conversational transactions accessing and updating a DB2 Table.

Following is the scenario of execution time screens:

SAMPLE PROBLEM

ENTER THE FOLLOWING SIGN-ON DATA AND DEPRESS ENTER

999999 -- USERID

z -- PROJECT

z -- GROUP

-- LOCKWORD

OPTIONALLY, ENTER TRANSACTION DETAILS FOR DIRECT DISPLAY OPTION:  $\mathbf{d}$  TRX:  $\mathbf{6em}$  KEY:

Figure C-1. Sign-on Screen

Upon entry of USERID, PROJECT/GROUP, OPTION and TRX enough information has been provided to IMSADF II to bypass the Primary and Secondary Option menu screens. The next screen displayed is the Primary Key Selection screen for TRXID 'EM', Employee Data.

Figure C-2. Primary Key Selection, Transaction EM

Enter the required Employee Search Data Key.

In this example the terminal operator does not know what is required and instead enters a '?' in the OPTION field.

Figure C-3. Primary Key Selection, Transaction EM, HELP REQUEST

By entering a '?' in the OPTION field the terminal operator has requested the IMSADF II HELP facility for the EM transaction.

Upon entry of the HELP request, the HELP panel is displayed.

HELP FOR TRXID E M OPTION: PAGE: 001 SAMPLE PROBLEM SELECTION SCREENS D B 2 PRIMARY KEY SELECTION EMPLOYEE SEARCH DATA ENTRY ACTION WHERE N IS 0 TO 9 - EMPLOYEE DATA IS **НИНИНИ** DISPLAYED ON TRANSACTION DISPLAY WHERE N IS 1 TO 5 NUMBERS - SECONDARY KEY NNNNN> OR < SELECTION WITH EMPLOYEES STARTING WITH THE PARTIAL KEY AND GREATER WHERE N IS 1 TO 5 NUMBERS - SECONDARY KEY N\_\_\_\_ OR % SELECTION WITH EMPLOYEES WITH THESE CORRECT PARTIAL VALUES
WHERE D INVOKES USER DEFINED KSELECT3 -DNNN D INDICATES DISPLAY ALL EMPLOYEES IN THE NNN DEPARTMENT ON THE SECONDARY KEY SELECTION BROWSE SCREEN PRESS PF1 TO DISPLAY NEXT PAGE

Figure C-4. HELP Screen, Transaction EM

Upon entry, the Primary Key Selection screen is displayed again for input.

Figure C-5. Primary Key Selection, Transaction EM

By entering da00 the terminal operator has requested that Secondary Key Selection Browse be invoked to display all employees from department A00.

Upon entry, the Secondary Key Selection Browse screen is displayed.

```
SECONDARY KEY
                                      SELECTION
             TRANSACTION: DB2 EMPLOYEE TABLE RX: 6EM KEY: DA00
RETRIEVE
OPTION:
            TRX: 6EM
SELECTION:
                  PRESS ENTER TO VIEW ADDITIONAL SELECTIONS
       EMPLOYEE
                         LAST
                                         WORK
       NUMBER
                                         DEPT
                         NAME
   1
2
3
       000010
                       HAAS
                                         A00
                                                     52750.00
       000110
                       LUCCHESSI
                                         A 0 0
                                                     46500.00
       000120
                       O'CONNELL
                                         A 0 0
                                                     29250.00
```

Figure C-6. Secondary Key Selection, Transaction EM BY WORKDEPT

The information required is often contained in the related fields displayed on this screen, and there is no need to go to the transaction display screen.

	SECONDARY KEY SELECTION
	RETRIEVE TRANSACTION: DB2 EMPLOYEE TABLE
1	OPTION: k TRX: 6EM KEY: DA00
	SELECTION: PRESS ENTER TO VIEW ADDITIONAL SELECTIONS
١	EMPLOYEE LAST WORK SALARY NUMBER NAME DEPT
١	1 000010 HAAS A00 52750.00
١	2 000110 LUCCHESSI A00 46500.00 3 000120 O'CONNELL A00 29250.00
	3 000120 O'CONNELL A00 29250.00
ı	
ı	
١	
١	
١	
١	

Figure C-7. Secondary Key Selection, Transaction EM BY WORKDEPT

The terminal operator enters 'k' in the OPTION field to return to the Primary Key Selection screen.

PRIMARY KEY SELECTION SCREEN
RETRIEVE TRANSACTION: DB2 EMPLOYEE TABLE
OPTION: TRX: 6EM KEY:
 \*\* ENTER THE FOLLOWING KEY INFORMATION \*\*

EMPLOYEE SEARCH DATA- 0003>

Figure C-8. Primary Key Selection, Transaction EM

Upon redisplay of the Primary Key Selection screen, a request is made for a generic search on the employee numbers beginning with 0003. The resulting Secondary Key Selection browse screen follows:

SECONDARY KEY SELECTION TRANSACTION: DB2 EMPLOYEE TABLE RETRIEVE OPTION: F KEY: 0003> TRX: 6EM SELECTION: 4 PRESS ENTER TO VIEW ADDITIONAL SELECTIONS **EMPLOYEE** WORK LAST SALARY NUMBER NAME DEPT 000300 SMITH E11 17750.00 000310 SETRIGHT E11 15900.00 MEHTA 19950.00 3 000320 E21 25370.00 E21 000330 LEE 000340 GOUNOT E21 23840.00

Figure C-9. Secondary Key Selection, Transaction EM BY EMPNO

From the Secondary Key Selection screen, selection 4 is made to proceed to the Transaction Display screen.

```
D B 2
                     SAMPLE PROBLEM
 RETRIEVE
                        TRANSACTION: DB2 EMPLOYEE TABLE
OPTION:
          TRX: 6EM KEY: 000330
      EMPLOYEE NUMBER---- 000330
      FIRST NAME----- WING
      MIDDLE INITIAL----
      LAST NAME----- LEE
      DEPARTMENT NUMBER---- E21
      PHONE EXTENSION---- 2103
      DATE HIRED----- 760223

JOB CODE---- 55

EDUCATION LEVEL---- 14
      SEX----- M
      BIRTH DATE---- 410718
      SALARY----- 25370.00
```

Figure C-10. Transaction Display Screen, Transaction EM

Because the transaction mode selected is 6 'RETRIEVE', updating is not allowed. If the transaction mode is changed to 5 'UPDATE', this same screen is used for updates.

```
D B 2
                    SAMPLE
                                 PROBLEM
RETRIEVE
                       TRANSACTION: DB2 EMPLOYEE TABLE
OPTION:
          TRX: 6es KEY: 000330
     EMPLOYEE NUMBER---- 000330
     FIRST NAME----- WING
     MIDDLE INITIAL----
     LAST NAME----- LEE
     DEPARTMENT NUMBER---- E21
     PHONE EXTENSION----- 2103
DATE HIRED---- 760223
     JOB CODE----- 55
     EDUCATION LEVEL----
     SEX----- M
     BIRTH DATE----- 410718
     SALARY----- 25370.00
```

Figure C-11. Transaction Display Screen, Transaction EM

From the 'EM' Transaction Display Screen the terminal operator changes the TRX field to 6ES. Internally IMSADF II switches to the 'ES' transaction. The 'ES' transaction does not have a key selection phase. The 'ES' transaction display screen is shown.

Figure C-12. Transaction Display Screen, Transaction ES

To request Employee Statistics by WORK DEPARTMENT enter a department number and PRESS enter.

```
SAMPLE PROBLEM EMPLOYEE STATISTICS
               D B 2
OPTION:
 COUNT OF EMPLOYEES
                           TOTAL SALARY
                                                AVERAGE SALARY
           0
 ENTER ONE OF THE FOLLOWING:
        WORK DEPARTMENT : a00
            OR
         JOB CODE (1 TO 60):
            OR
        EDUCATION LEVEL
        11 = LESS THAN HIGH SCHOOL
12 = HIGH SCHOOL
        16 = COLLEGE DEGREE
        18 = MASTERS DEGREE
        20 = P.H.D.
```

Figure C-13. Transaction Display Screen, Transaction ES

The terminal operator enters department number A00.

```
D B 2
                          SAMPLE
                                           PROBLEM
                        EMPLOYEE STATISTICS
OPTION:
                             TOTAL SALARY
 COUNT OF EMPLOYEES
                                                    AVERAGE SALARY
                                 128500.00
                                                       42833.33
 ENTER ONE OF THE FOLLOWING:
    BY WORK DEPARTMENT
                                 A00
             OR
          JOB CODE (1 TO 60):
             0R
        EDUCATION LEVEL :
11 = LESS THAN HIGH SCHOOL
12 = HIGH SCHOOL
                                         0
        16 = COLLEGE DEGREE
        18 = MASTERS DEGREE
        20 = P.H.D.
```

Figure C-14. Transaction Display Screen, Transaction ES by DEPT A00

The ES Transaction Display screen is redisplayed with Employee Statistics for department A00.

```
D B 2
                            SAMPLE
                                              PROBLEM
                          EMPLOYEE STATISTICS
OPTION:
                                                        AVERAGE SALARY
                                TOTAL SALARY
 COUNT OF EMPLOYEES
                                   128500.00
                                                           42833.33
 ENTER ONE OF THE FOLLOWING:
    BY WORK DEPARTMENT
              OR
          JOB CODE (1 TO 60): 55
              0R
         EDUCATION LEVEL :
11 = LESS THAN HIGH SCHOOL
12 = HIGH SCHOOL
                                            0
         16 = COLLEGE DEGREE
18 = MASTERS DEGREE
         20 = P.H.D.
```

Figure C-15. Transaction Display Screen, Transaction ES by DEPT A00

The terminal operator blanks out WORK DEPARTMENT and enters 55 in the JOB CODE to request statistics for all employees with a job code of 55.

```
SAMPLE PROBLEM EMPLOYEE STATISTICS
                 D B 2
OPTION:
COUNT OF EMPLOYEES
                              TOTAL SALARY
                                                      AVERAGE SALARY
                                   250170.00
                                                          27796.66
ENTER ONE OF THE FOLLOWING:
    BY WORK DEPARTMENT
             OR
          JOB CODE (1 TO 60):
             OR
         EDUCATION LEVEL
         11 = LESS THAN HIGH SCHOOL
12 = HIGH SCHOOL
16 = COLLEGE DEGREE
         18 = MASTERS DEGREE
         20 = P.H.D.
```

Figure C-16. Transaction Display Screen, Transaction ES by JOBCODE 55

The resulting Data Display shows the count of employees, total salary and average salary for job code 55.

```
S A M P L E P R EMPLOYEE STATISTICS
                                            PROBLEM
                 D B 2
OPTION:
                               TOTAL SALARY
 COUNT OF EMPLOYEES
                                                      AVERAGE SALARY
                                  250170.00
                                                          27796.66
            g
 ENTER ONE OF THE FOLLOWING:
         WORK DEPARTMENT
             0R
          JOB CODE (1 TO 60):
             0R
         EDUCATION LEVEL
                                          16
         11 = LESS THAN HIGH SCHOOL
12 = HIGH SCHOOL
         16 = COLLEGE DEGREE
         18 = MASTERS DEGREE
         \overline{20} = P.H.D.
```

Figure C-17. Transaction Display Screen, Transaction ES by JOBCODE 55

The terminal operator enters a zero in the JOB CODE field and enters a 16 in the EDUCATION LEVEL field to request statistics for all employees with an education level of 16.

```
SAMPLE PROBLEM EMPLOYEE STATISTICS
                     D B 2
OPTION:
 COUNT OF EMPLOYEES
                                      TOTAL SALARY
                                                                  AVERAGE SALARY
             12
                                          321335.00
                                                                       26777.92
 ENTER ONE OF THE FOLLOWING:
          WORK DEPARTMENT
                0R
            JOB CODE (1 TO 60):
          EDUCATION LEVEL :
11 = LESS THAN HIGH SCHOOL
12 = HIGH SCHOOL
16 = COLLEGE DEGREE
18 = MASTERS DEGREE
                                                   16
           \overline{20} = P.H.D.
```

Figure C-18. Transaction Display Screen, Transaction ES by EDUCLVL 16

The resulting Data Display shows the count of employees, total salary and average salary for education level 16.

#### APPENDIX D. BTS IN AN IMS/VS - DB2 ENVIRONMENT

The IMS/VS Batch Terminal Simulator (BTS), program product number 5668-948, Release 2, supports the tracing of SQL calls in a format similar to that of DL/I calls. Refer to the <a href="IMS/VS BTS Program Reference and Operations Manual">IMS/VS BTS Program Reference and Operations Manual</a>, SH20-5523, for complete details.

To run BTS as a batch job, a DFSESL DD statement must be added to the BTSBMP procedure.

To run BTS in TSO foreground, add an ALLOC command for the DFSESL data set to the BTS CLIST. Execute the BTS CLIST and specify the KW(BMP) option.

#### BTS INPUT COMMANDS

The BTSIN data set is used to input BTS command statements.

```
./D DDOF=327029
./O DB=YES Q=YES ATR=NO
./T TC=MFC1T01 MBR=MFC1TOM SPA=6000 LANG=ASM TYPE=MSG PLC=20
./T TC=MFC1T02 MBR=MFC1TOM SPA=6000 LANG=ASM TYPE=MSG PLC=20
./T TC=MFC1T03 MBR=MFC1TOM SPA=6000 LANG=ASM TYPE=MSG PLC=20
./T TC=MFC1T99 MBR=MFC1T99 SPA=6000 LANG=ASM TYPE=MSG PLC=20
./T TC=SAMPTOR MBR=SAMPTOR SPA=6000 LANG=ASM TYPE=MSG PLC=20
./T TC=LTERM3 MDL=2
./T TC=IOPCB MDL=2
```

Figure D-1. Sample BTSIN Data for an IMSADF II - DB2 Transaction

### BTS OUTPUT

```
***
     SQL CALL- FUNC=CALL,
                                         RTRNCD= 0000
      ----2-RDIIN = H SAMPSES #
                                                       --.---5----
                                         -3----
                                              8
                                 Ι
                                           8
             028001ECDDECE4107F1B3800002000FB00FC0A0E
             08800E2147252033BD6C090106420A8C0A8C050F
                                         V
 INPUT VARS =
             00020F00003500000E00003500360E0000350036
             0008100004C1000015D204C504C3159204CC04C5
OUTPUT VARS =
                 ח
             00010C00006D0000
             0000140307B30000
BTS0096I DB2 SQL CALLS = 00001
```

Figure D-2. BTS SQL Trace

This figure displays the BTS SQL trace output produced, when the IMSADF II sample transaction 'ES', defined in appendices B and C, executes the DEPTSELC SQL function.

RTRNCD For each SQL statement traced the RTRNCD presents the SQL return code from the SQLCA.

RDIIN The first forty bytes of the RDIIN are displayed (fixed portion). The RDIIN precedes each run time SQL statement in a compilation. Bytes 37 and 38 contain the SQL statement number, and can be used to identify this statement in a compilation listing.

VARS INPUT and/or OUTPUT VARS contain the host variables referenced in the SQL statement.

- The first four bytes contain the length of the displayed area.
- Twelve bytes are displayed for each variable:

Host Variable type
 Host Variable length
 Host Variable address
 4 bytes

Host Variable Indicator address - 4 bytes

Refer to the variable part of the RDIIN in a compilation listing.

#### APPENDIX E. IMSADF II TRACE FACILITY

A trace capability is provided as part of IMSADF II which can be used for detailed tracing of internal control and flow module by module.

Reference the <u>IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 Diagnosis Guide</u> for complete details on using the IMSADF II trace facility.

If tracing is required for an IMSADF II transaction that accesses DB2 Tables/Views through the Table Handler Rule interface set the IMSADF II trace options as follows:

FLOW=Y, EXTEND=Y, MODULES=(MFC1V09S)

The traces in module MFC1V09S display:

- Parameters passed to MFC1V09S
- Parameters MFC1V09S passes to the Table Handler Rule
- SQL Communication Area
- Data Compare information

If tracing is required while executing the RGLGEN Utility, set the IMSADF II trace options as follows:

FLOW=Y, EXTEND=Y, MODULES=(MFC1Y25)

The traces in module MFC1Y25 display:

- Parameters passed to MFC1Y25
- SQL Communication Area
- MFC1Y25 return codes and data areas

#### APPENDIX F. RGLGEN UTILITY LINK-EDIT PLAN

????Y25 RGLGEN Utility link-edit load module name.

 $\ref{thm:command}$  is the installed ADFID in effect at link-edit time. This is the PROGRAM-NAME on the TSO RUN command.

????SYSP IMSADF II installation options, control block

MFC1Y25 RGLGEN Utility Main Routine

MFC1Y35 RGLGEN Utility Message Building

MFC1Y36 RGLGEN Utility Message Text

MFC1Y37 RGLGEN Utility Message Tailoring

MFC1V38 IMSADF II DDNAME Checker

MFC1V39 IMSADF II Trace Interface

MFC1V48 IMSADF II PDS Access Function

MFC1A16 IMSADF II Date Time Routine

DSNELI DB2 TSO Language Interface

Additional modules: Optionally loaded if required

MFC1V40 IMSADF II Trace Output Function

????FLLM IMSADF II Trace Control Function

### Special Characters

&SQLENDS 2-8, 2-18, 2-21 #COLS Rules Generator parameter 2-25

# A

abnormal termination codes 3-12 ADF See IMSADF II ADFDUMP DD 3-8
ADFSQLHO DD 2-25
ADFSQLHW DD 2-25 ADFU008 3-9, B-2 Application Plan 2-8, 2-21, 2-34, 2-38, 2-39, 2-40, 4-1 See also DB2 application plan AREA parameter 2-36, 4-10 arithmetic expressions 1-3, 2-2, 2-3, 2-4, 2-5 ASC operand value 2-5, 2-17 assembler 4-10 audit exit 2-7, 2-37 native SQL 1-1, 1-3, 2-21, 2-38, 2-40, 4-11 SQLHNDLR 2-7, 2-8, 2-10, 2-18, 2-34, 2-35, 2-36, 4-1, 4-10 audit logic 1-1 audit operation 1-1, 2-4, 2-5, 2-6, 2-7, 2-8, 2-10, 2-18, 2-23, 2-33, 4-5, 4-7, 4-9 auditor 2-20, 2-33, 2-34, 4-5, 4-6 authorization 2-3, 2-38, 3-1

# В

batch-BMP 2-24
Batch Terminal Simulator (BTS) D-1
bind process
See DB2 bind process
BIT 2-4
boundary alignment 2-7, 2-8

# C

catalog
 See DB2

CDELETE operand value 2-9, 2-10, 2-13, 2-23, 4-7, 4-9
 See also table handler rule

CHAR 2-6

CLOSE 2-19, 2-20

CLOSE CURSOR 2-11, 2-13, 2-14, 2-17, 2-20, 4-1, 4-2, 4-4

COBOL 2-21, 2-35, 4-10

COLUMN 1-1, 2-1, 2-5, 2-12, 2-16, 2-19, 2-20, 2-21, 2-32, 2-33, 3-1, 3-11, 4-4, 4-8, 4-9 column - set null value 2-32 column - test null value 2-32 column - test truncation Column I/O area 2-11, 4-4 Column name 1-3, 2-4, 2-5, 2-9, 2-19, 2-21 COLUMN statement 1-1, 2-2, 2-3, 2-4, 2-5, 2-7, 2-22, 2-25 composite rule 2-24, 4-10 CONCAT audit operation 2-26, 4-5 concurrency control mechanism See DB2 Locking conversational 2-18, 2-23, 2-24, 2-40, 4-7, A-2 COPYSEG 1-2, 2-7, 2-21, 2-34, 4-11 correlation name 2-3 count 1-3 CREATE 1-2, 3-6 CSELECT operand value 2-9, 2-10, 2-11, 2-20, 4-1, 4-4 See also table handler rule CUPDATE operand value 2-9, 2-10, 2-12, 2-23, 4-8 See also table handler rule CURSOR 1-2, 2-10, 2-19, 2-20, 4-8 CURSOR DELETE 2-8, 2-10, 2-13, 4-8 CURSOR SELECT 2-8, 2-10, 2-11, 2-16, 4-2 cursor stability 1-3 CURSOR UPDATE 2-8, 2-10, 2-12, 4-8 CVALL operand 2-3

# D

data base

DB2 2-4, 2-33, 2-34, 4-4

DL/I 2-4

relational 1-1

data base delete 2-14, 2-23

data base insert 2-12

data base request module - DBRM 2-8, 2-25, 2-39, 3-6, 5-2, B-11

data base retrieval 2-8

data base update 1-2, 2-8, 2-10, 2-13, 2-23, 2-28, 2-34, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9

Data Compare 2-10, 2-12, 2-13, 2-21, 2-28, 2-34, 4-8, 4-10

DATACOMP operand 2-12, 2-13, 2-23, 2-28, 2-34, 4-8, 4-10

DBPATH operand 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-23, 2-30, 2-34, 2-37, 4-1, 4-2, 4-4

DBPATH operand 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-23, 2-30, 2-34, 2-37, 4-1, 4-2, 4-4

DBPATH operand 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-23, 2-34, 2-38, 2-39, 2-40, 3-7, 3-10, 4-1, 5-2, B-11

CICS/OS/VS restriction 5-2

authorization 2-3, 2-38, 3-1

bind process 1-2, 1-3, 2-8, 2-16, 2-38, 2-39, 3-7, 3-10, 5-2, B-11

BIND panel 2-39

BIND/REBIND/FREE menu panel 2-39

DB2I option 2-38	table space 1-3
DB2I option panel 2-38	truncated 2-2, 2-29, 2-32, 4-5, 4-6
ISPF-MVS primary option menu	4-9
panel 2-38	view 1-1, 2-1, 2-2, 2-3, 2-7, 2-9, 2-12, 2-15, 2-16, 2-27, 2-34, 3-10,
catalog 2-5, 3-1, 3-2, 3-3, 3-11, 5-1	4-1, 4-8, 4-10
column 1-1, 2-5, 2-12, 2-19, 2-25,	View name 2-9
2-26, 2-33, 2-37, 4-4, 4-5, 4-6,	DB2PRINT DD 2-25
4-8, 4-9	DB2TERM DD 2-25
column - set null value 2-32	DCFIELD 4-8, 4-10
column - test null value 2-32	DCLGEN 2-21
column - test truncation 2-32	DECIMAL 2-6, 2-7
column name 1-3, 2-4, 2-5, 2-9,	DECLARE CURSOR 2-11, 2-13, 2-14, 2-17,
2-19, 2-21, 2-37	2-20, 4-1, 4-2, 4-4, 4-8
composite INDEX 2-4	DELETE 1-1, 2-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-8, 2-10,
cursor stability 1-3	2-13, 2-15, 2-19, 2-23, 2-34, 4-9
data base management system 1-1	DELETE operand value 2-9, 2-10, 2-15
Data Base Request Module - DBRM 2-8,	See also table handler rule
2-25, 2-39, 3-6, 3-7, 3-10, 5-2, B-11	DESC operand value 2-5, 2-17 distinct 1-3, 2-1, 2-11, 2-20
data types	DL/I exit 1-4, 4-11
CHAR 2-6	DL/I segment 2-23, 4-10
DECIMAL 2-6, 2-7	DLET operand 2-23
FLOAT 1-2, 2-4, 2-6, 2-7, 2-26,	driver link-edits 2-24
4-4, 4-11	DSECT
INTEGER 2-6, 2-7	See rules generator
SMALLINT 2-6, 2-7	DSN TSO command 3-1, 3-8
VARCHAR 1-2, 2-6, 2-7, 2-26, 4-4,	DSNELI - TSO language interface
4-11	See RGLGEN Utility
DCLGEN 2-21, 3-1	DSNHLI VCON 4-10
DSNHLI VCON 4-10	DSN8.TEMPL 5-1, B-1
DSN8.TEMPL A-1	DSQLCALL operand value 2-9
indicator variables 1-2, 2-2, 2-5,	See also table handler rule
2-9, 2-12, 2-21, 2-32, 2-33, 4-4, 4-6, 4-10, 4-11	dynamic rules 5-1
4-0, 4-10, 4-11 1-7 2-7	dynamic SQL 1-1, 1-3, 4-1, 4-10
join 1-3, 2-3	
locking 1-3	
locking 1-3 naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11	
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11	E
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12,	E
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10	E
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34,	Employee Table
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13,	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34,	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12,
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30,	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30,	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30,	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36,	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7,	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5 dynamic screen attribute
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5 dynamic screen attribute modification 4-5
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLWARN 2-28, 2-29, 2-30, 2-33,	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5 dynamic screen attribute modification 4-5 encode-decode 4-5
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLWARN 2-28, 2-29, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-5, 4-6, 4-9	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5 dynamic screen attribute modification 4-5 encode-decode 4-5 immediate SQL call 4-5
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLWARN 2-28, 2-29, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-5, 4-6, 4-9 SUBSYSTEM NAME 3-9	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5 dynamic screen attribute modification 4-5 encode-decode 4-5 immediate SQL call 4-5 key selection browse 4-5
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLWARN 2-28, 2-29, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-5, 4-6, 4-9 SUBSYSTEM NAME 3-9 table 1-1, 2-33, 2-34, 3-10, 4-10	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5 dynamic screen attribute modification 4-5 encode-decode 4-5 immediate SQL call 4-5 key selection browse 4-5 message sending 4-5
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLWARN 2-28, 2-29, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-5, 4-6, 4-9 SUBSYSTEM NAME 3-9 table 1-1, 2-33, 2-34, 3-10, 4-10 auditor 2-27, 2-30, 2-31, 4-5	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5 dynamic screen attribute modification 4-5 encode-decode 4-5 immediate SQL call 4-5 key selection browse 4-5 message sending 4-5 primary key audit 4-5
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLWARN 2-28, 2-29, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7 SUBSYSTEM NAME 3-9 table 1-1, 2-33, 2-34, 3-10, 4-10 auditor 2-27, 2-30, 2-31, 4-5 execution 4-1, 4-2, 4-4, 4-7	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5 dynamic screen attribute modification 4-5 encode-decode 4-5 immediate SQL call 4-5 key selection browse 4-5 message sending 4-5 primary key audit 4-5 subroutine 4-5
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLWARN 2-28, 2-29, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-5, 4-6, 4-9 SUBSYSTEM NAME 3-9 table 1-1, 2-33, 2-34, 3-10, 4-10 auditor 2-27, 2-30, 2-31, 4-5 execution 4-1, 4-2, 4-4, 4-7 generate operands 2-7, 2-8, 2-9,	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5 dynamic screen attribute modification 4-5 encode-decode 4-5 immediate SQL call 4-5 key selection browse 4-5 message sending 4-5 primary key audit 4-5 subroutine 4-5 SUBSTR 4-5
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLWARN 2-28, 2-29, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-5, 4-6, 4-9 SUBSYSTEM NAME 3-9 table 1-1, 2-33, 2-34, 3-10, 4-10 auditor 2-27, 2-30, 2-31, 4-5 execution 4-1, 4-2, 4-4, 4-7 generate operands 2-7, 2-8, 2-9, 2-23, 2-26	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5 dynamic screen attribute modification 4-5 encode-decode 4-5 immediate SQL call 4-5 key selection browse 4-5 message sending 4-5 primary key audit 4-5 subroutine 4-5
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLWARN 2-28, 2-29, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-5, 4-6, 4-9 SUBSYSTEM NAME 3-9 table 1-1, 2-33, 2-34, 3-10, 4-10 auditor 2-27, 2-30, 2-31, 4-5 execution 4-1, 4-2, 4-4, 4-7 generate operands 2-7, 2-8, 2-9, 2-23, 2-26 name 1-3 restrictions 1-4	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5 dynamic screen attribute modification 4-5 encode-decode 4-5 immediate SQL call 4-5 key selection browse 4-5 message sending 4-5 primary key audit 4-5 subroutine 4-5 SUBSTR 4-5 transaction switching 4-5
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLWARN 2-28, 2-29, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-5, 4-6, 4-9 SUBSYSTEM NAME 3-9 table 1-1, 2-33, 2-34, 3-10, 4-10 auditor 2-27, 2-30, 2-31, 4-5 execution 4-1, 4-2, 4-4, 4-7 generate operands 2-7, 2-8, 2-9, 2-23, 2-26 name 1-3 restrictions 1-4 standard functions 2-11, 2-12,	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5 dynamic screen attribute modification 4-5 encode-decode 4-5 immediate SQL call 4-5 key selection browse 4-5 message sending 4-5 primary key audit 4-5 subroutine 4-5 SUBSTR 4-5 transaction switching 4-5 VARCHAR 4-5 COBOL 4-10 data base handling 4-7
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLWARN 2-28, 2-29, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-5, 4-6, 4-9 SUBSYSTEM NAME 3-9 table 1-1, 2-33, 2-34, 3-10, 4-10 auditor 2-27, 2-30, 2-31, 4-5 execution 4-1, 4-2, 4-4, 4-7 generate operands 2-7, 2-8, 2-9, 2-23, 2-26 name 1-3 restrictions 1-4 standard functions 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 4-8, 4-9	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5 dynamic screen attribute modification 4-5 encode-decode 4-5 immediate SQL call 4-5 key selection browse 4-5 message sending 4-5 primary key audit 4-5 subroutine 4-5 SUBSTR 4-5 transaction switching 4-5 VARCHAR 4-5 COBOL 4-10 data base handling 4-7 CDELETE - CURSOR DELETE for
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLWARN 2-28, 2-29, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-5, 4-6, 4-9 SUBSYSTEM NAME 3-9 table 1-1, 2-33, 2-34, 3-10, 4-10 auditor 2-27, 2-30, 2-31, 4-5 execution 4-1, 4-2, 4-4, 4-7 generate operands 2-7, 2-8, 2-9, 2-23, 2-26 name 1-3 restrictions 1-4 standard functions 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 4-8, 4-9 statement 2-1, 2-2, 2-3, 2-4	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5 dynamic screen attribute modification 4-5 encode-decode 4-5 immediate SQL call 4-5 key selection browse 4-5 message sending 4-5 primary key audit 4-5 subroutine 4-5 SUBSTR 4-5 transaction switching 4-5 VARCHAR 4-5 COBOL 4-10 data base handling 4-7 CDELETE - CURSOR DELETE for single row 4-8
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLWARN 2-28, 2-29, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-5, 4-6, 4-9 SUBSYSTEM NAME 3-9 table 1-1, 2-33, 2-34, 3-10, 4-10 auditor 2-27, 2-30, 2-31, 4-5 execution 4-1, 4-2, 4-4, 4-7 generate operands 2-7, 2-8, 2-9, 2-23, 2-26 name 1-3 restrictions 1-4 standard functions 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 4-8, 4-9 statement 2-1, 2-2, 2-3, 2-4 table name 2-9, 2-37	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5 dynamic screen attribute modification 4-5 encode-decode 4-5 immediate SQL call 4-5 key selection browse 4-5 message sending 4-5 primary key audit 4-5 subroutine 4-5 SUBSTR 4-5 transaction switching 4-5 VARCHAR 4-5 COBOL 4-10 data base handling 4-7 CDELETE - CURSOR DELETE for single row 4-8 CUPDATE - CURSOR UPDATE for
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLWARN 2-28, 2-29, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-5, 4-6, 4-9 SUBSYSTEM NAME 3-9 table 1-1, 2-33, 2-34, 3-10, 4-10 auditor 2-27, 2-30, 2-31, 4-5 execution 4-1, 4-2, 4-4, 4-7 generate operands 2-7, 2-8, 2-9, 2-23, 2-26 name 1-3 restrictions 1-4 standard functions 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 4-8, 4-9 statement 2-1, 2-2, 2-3, 2-4 table name 2-9, 2-37 correlation name 2-3	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5 dynamic screen attribute modification 4-5 encode-decode 4-5 immediate SQL call 4-5 key selection browse 4-5 message sending 4-5 primary key audit 4-5 subroutine 4-5 SUBSTR 4-5 transaction switching 4-5 VARCHAR 4-5 COBOL 4-10 data base handling 4-7 CDELETE - CURSOR DELETE for single row 4-8 CUPDATE - CURSOR UPDATE for
naming conventions 2-40, 3-10, 3-11 null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10 page 1-3 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25, 2-34, 2-36 row 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11 scheduling 1-3, 2-38 sort 1-3, 2-16 SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30, 2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10 SQL Return Codes 2-14, 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 SQLWARN 2-28, 2-29, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-5, 4-6, 4-9 SUBSYSTEM NAME 3-9 table 1-1, 2-33, 2-34, 3-10, 4-10 auditor 2-27, 2-30, 2-31, 4-5 execution 4-1, 4-2, 4-4, 4-7 generate operands 2-7, 2-8, 2-9, 2-23, 2-26 name 1-3 restrictions 1-4 standard functions 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 4-8, 4-9 statement 2-1, 2-2, 2-3, 2-4 table name 2-9, 2-37	Employee Table See DSN8.TEMPL END DSN subcommand 3-9 Error Messages 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 3-12, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2 EXECUTE 3-1 execution processing 4-1 assembler 4-10 auditor 4-5, 4-6 arithmetic operations 4-5 CONCAT 4-5 data compares 4-5 data moves 4-5 dynamic screen attribute modification 4-5 encode-decode 4-5 immediate SQL call 4-5 key selection browse 4-5 message sending 4-5 primary key audit 4-5 subroutine 4-5 SUBSTR 4-5 transaction switching 4-5 VARCHAR 4-5 COBOL 4-10 data base handling 4-7 CDELETE - CURSOR DELETE for single row 4-8 CUPDATE - CURSOR UPDATE for

AREA 4-10 audit exit 4-10, 4-11 KEY 4-10 LABEL 4-10 CONCAT example 2-26 data compares 2-26, 4-5 data moves 2-26, 4-5 DB2 column - set null value 2-32
DB2 column - test null value 2-33
DB2 column - test null value special processing routine 4-10, 4-11 SQLCA 4-10 example 2-32 DB2 column - test truncation
DB2 column - test truncation SQLHNDLR call 4-10 table ID 4-10 key selection example 2-33 COFIELD 4-4 dynamic screen attribute modification 2-26, 4-5 encode-decode 2-26, 4-5 FLOAT 2-26 keyareas 4-4 primary key selection 4-1, 4-2 secondary key selection browse 4-2 immediate SQL call 2-27, 4-5 label 2-27, 2-28 OK 2-28 SQL 2-27 message handling 4-6 error messages 4-6, 4-7 error processing 4-6 SQLCODE 2-28, 2-33 SQLWARN 2-28, 2-33 tableid 2-28 VARLIST6 4-6 VARLIST7 4-6 warning messages 4-6 immediate SQL call example interrogate SQLCODE 2-28 interrogate SQLCODE example PL/I 4-10 rule and SPA workarea handling 4-10 screen handling 4-4 2-30 signon and menus 4-1 SPASQL 4-5 SPASQLKS 4-5 SPAWHERE 4-5 interrogate SQLWARN 2-28 interrogate SQLWARN example 2-30 KEYFIELD 2-28, 2-31 message sending 2-26, 4-5 message sending 2-26, 4-5
null value 2-26
SETERROR 2-33
SETFLAG 2-28
SPASQL 2-20, 4-5
SPASQLCD 2-30, 2-36, 2-37
SPASQLKS 2-16, 2-30, 4-2, 4-3, 4-5
SPAWARN 2-30, 2-36, 2-37
SPAWHERE 2-20, 4-3, 4-5
subroutine 2-26, 4-5
SUBSTR 2-27, 4-5
SUBSTR example 2-27
transaction switching 2-26, 4-5 SQL return codes 4-5, 4-6 SQLCODE 4-5, 4-6 SQLWARN 4-5, 4-6 F FETCH 2-11, 2-13, 2-14, 2-17, 2-19, 2-20, 2-31, 2-34, 2-36, 4-1, 4-2, 4-4, 4-5, 4-8 FIELD 4-4 transaction switching 2-26, 4-5 USER SQL - key selection browse 2-30 SPASQL 2-30, 2-31 See also COLUMN, rules generator FIELD statement 1-1, 2-4 FLOAT 1-2, 2-4, 2-6, 2-7, 2-26, 4-4, SPASQL example 2-31 SPAWHERE 2-31 SPAWHERE example 2-32 VARCHAR 2-26, 4-5 host variable 2-4, 2-11, 2-16, 2-19, FOR UPDATE OF 2-13, 2-20, 4-8
FROM tablename 2-11, 2-13, 2-14, 2-17
FUNC 2-35 2-21, 4-3, 4-4, 4-10auditor processing 2-28, 2-29, 2-31, 2-33, 4-5 format 2-20 G naming convention 2-9 null processing 2-12 SQLHNDLR 2-35 GENERATE statement 2-1, 2-7, 2-18, 2-21, 2-22, 2-23, 2-24 facility data bases 2-24 GRANT 3-1 GROUP BY 1-4 I See Interactive Application Development Facility IBM DATABASE 2 See DB2 ID 1-1, 2-7, 2-8, 2-9, 2-12, 2-20, 2-21, 2-23, 2-25, 2-28, 2-35, 2-37, 3-9, 3-10, 3-11, 4-10 help facility 5-1, B-8, C-2 See also IMSADF II Transaction, Sample Problem
HI value 2-5, 2-18
high level audit language 1-1, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-18, 2-20, 2-26, 5-1, B-9 ID operand 2-22 IKJEFT01 program immediate SQL call audit operation 2-27, 4-5

arithmetic operations 2-26, 4-5 CONCAT 2-26, 4-5

IMS Application Development Facility II

See IMSADF II

```
driver 2-4, 2-7, 2-8, 2-12, 2-21, 2-23, 2-28, 2-33, 2-34, 2-35, 2-40, 4-10
IMS/VS ROLL call 4-6, 4-8, 4-9
IMS/VS transaction name 2-40 IMSADF II
                                                                             EM B-1, B-9, C-1
    audit exit 2-7, 2-37
        native SQL 1-1, 1-3, 2-21, 2-3
2-40, 4-11
SQLHNDLR 2-7, 2-8, 2-10, 2-18,
                          1-1, 1-3, 2-21, 2-38,
                                                                                   B-1, B-10, C-7
                                                                             ES
                                                                                  B-1
                                                                             EX
                                                                             help facility 5-1, B-8, C-2
          2-34, 2-35, 2-36, 4-1, 4-10
                                                                             nonconversational sample 5-1, B-1
                                                                                                          4-7, A-3
    audit logic 1-1
                                                                              text utility 1-2, 1-4
    audit operation 1-1, 2-4, 2-5, 2-6,
                                                                    USER SQL statement 1-3, 2-8, 2-9, 2-10, 2-18, 2-19, 2-20, 2-21, 2-27, 2-30, 2-34, 2-35, 4-3, 4-4

INCLUDE SQLCA 2-35, 2-36

INDEX 1-2, 2-4, 2-16, 3-6, 4-1

indicator variables 1-2, 2-2, 2-5, 2-9, 2-12, 2-21, 2-32, 2-33, 4-4, 4-6, 4-10, 4-11
      2-7, 2-8, 2-10, 2-18, 2-23, 2-33,
    4-5, 4-7, 4-9
driver 2-24, 2-28
    dynamic rules 5-1
    function
         auditor 2-20, 2-33, 2-34, 4-5,
          4-6
         COFIELD
                                                                      4-11
                      4-4
         COPYSEG 1-2, 2-7, 2-21, 2-34,
                                                                    informational messages 3-11, 3-12
                                                                    input transaction rule 2-3, 2-23, 2-34,
          4-11
                                                                    2-37, 4-4
INSERT 1-1, 1-3, 2-1, 2-2, 2-3, 2-4, 2-5, 2-8, 2-12, 2-19, 2-34, 3-1, 4-4,
         data base delete 2-14, 2-23 data base insert 2-12
         data base retrieval 2-8
         data_base_update_ 1-2, 2-8, 2-10,
                                                                      4-9
          2-13, 2-23, 2-28, 2-34, 4-6, 4-8,
                                                                    INSERT operand value 2-9, 2-10, 2-12,
                                                                      4-7
         Data Compare 2-10, 2-12, 2-13, 2-21, 2-28, 2-34, 4-8, 4-10
DL/I exit 1-4
                                                                         See also table handler rule
                                                                    installation 5-1 INTEGER 2-6, 2-7
         immediate SQL call 2-27, 4-5

IMS/VS ROLL call 4-6, 4-8, 4-9

key selection browse 1-2, 2-3,

2-4, 2-5, 2-8, 2-10, 2-16, 2-17,
                                                                    Interactive Application Development Facility - IADF
                                                                      Facility
                                                                         RGLGEN Utility
                                                                                                  3-1, 3-9, B-2
                                                                         RGLGEN Utility GENERATION panel
        2-18, 2-19, 2-20, 2-21, 2-30,
4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6
MAPPER 1-2, 2-7, 2-21, 2-34, 4-11
                                                                              ADFCOLUMNID TABLE
                                                                                                          3-10
                                                                             DB2 PLAN NAME 3-10
DB2 SUBSYSTEM NAME
                                                                              ISPF Library 3-10 member name 3-10
         N option 1-4, 4-4
         primary key audit 2-4, 2-16, 2-20, 2-30, 4-2, 4-3, 4-5
                                                                             member name
PGROUP 3-9
         Primary Key Selection 2-10, 2-12,
                                                                              ssssTBxx 3-10
          4-1, 4-2
                                                                              SYSID 3-9
         rules documentation 2-37 secondary key audit 2-20, 2-31,
                                                                              table ID 3-10
                                                                              table name 3-10
                                                                     interrogate SQLCODE and SQLWARN 2-28
          4-2, 4-3, 4-5
         SEGUPDTE call 2-28, 2-34

SQLHNDLR call 1-1, 2-8, 2-10,

2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-18,
                                                                     interrogate SQLWARN
                                                                                                    2-28
                                                                    INTO 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-17,
                                                                      2-21, 4-10
          2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 2-37, 4-1, 4-7,
                                                                     ISPF Library
          4-10
                                                                     ISRT operand 2-23
         standard processing 2-4, 2-8,
          2-10
         standard TWIN processing 1-4, 4-4
    standard (WIN processing 1-4, 4-

ID 1-1, 2-7, 2-8, 2-9, 2-12, 2-20,

2-21, 2-23, 2-25, 2-28, 2-37, 3-9,

3-10, 3-11

KEY 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-5, 2-10, 2-12,

2-15, 2-16, 2-18, 2-22, 2-34

naming conventions 1-1, 2-9, 2-40

non-standard SQL statements 2-10,
                                                                    JCL 2-25, 3-7, 3-8
                                                                     Join 1-3, 2-3
    non-standard SQL statements
      2-14, 2-15, 2-19, 2-27, 2-34, 2-35
    special processing routine 2-7 binding 2-38 native SQL 1-1, 1-3, 2-21, 2-37,
                                                                            K
                                                                    KEY 1-1, 2-3, 2-5, 2-10, 2-12, 2-15, 2-16, 2-18, 2-22, 2-34, 2-35, 4-10
Key column 2-9, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-17,
          2-40, 4-11
         SQLHNDLR 2-8, 2-10, 2-18, 2-34,
          2-35, 2-36, 4-1, 4-10
                                                                      2-20, 2-21, 2-28, 2-30, 2-31, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-4, 4-8
     standard SQL statement 2-23
    standard SQL statements 2-10, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-19, 2-27, 2-30, 2-34, 2-35, 4-4, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9
                                                                     KEY operand 2-4, 2-5
                                                                     key_selection_browse 1-2, 2-3, 2-4,
                                                                      2-5, 2-8, 2-10, 2-16, 2-17, 2-18, 2-19, 2-20, 2-21, 2-30, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-5,
     static rules 5-1
    trace facility 3-8, E-1
transaction 4-10
     transaction
         conversational 4-7, A-2
                                                                    KEYFIELD 2-28, 2-31
```

KSELECTN 2-16, 2-19, 2-20, 2-30, 2-31, 4-2, 4-3, 4-4
See also table handler rule
KSELECT1 2-9, 2-10, 2-16, 2-17, 2-30, 4-2, 4-3
See also table handler rule
KSELECT2 2-9, 2-10, 2-16, 2-17, 2-30, 4-2, 4-3
See also table handler rule

# L

LABEL 2-8, 2-18, 2-20, 2-21, 2-37, 4-10 LENGTH operand 2-6, 2-22 LIKE predicate 2-4, 2-9, 2-11, 2-16, 2-17, 2-18, 2-21, 2-30, 4-2, 4-4 LO value 2-5, 2-18 locking 1-3

## M

MAPPER 1-2, 2-7, 2-21, 2-34, 4-11
MEMBER 3-10, 3-11
Member Name 3-10
MERGE statement 2-5
message
 error 2-30, 3-10, 3-11, 4-1, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9, 5-2
generation 2-33
informational 3-11
VARLIST 2-33
VARLIST1 2-33
VARLIST6 2-30, 2-33, 4-6
VARLIST7 2-30, 2-33, 4-6
warning 2-30, 3-11, 4-6
MFC1V09S E-1
MFC1Y25D 3-6, 3-10

## N

N option 1-4, 4-4
NAME 3-10
naming conventions 1-1, 2-9, 2-40, 3-10
DB2 application plan name 2-40
IMS/VS PSB name 2-40
IMS/VS transaction name 2-40
IMSADF II transaction driver
name 2-40
native SQL 2-21, 2-36, 2-38, 2-40, 4-1, 4-10
NOALIGN assembler parameter 2-7, 2-8
non-standard SQL statements 2-10, 2-14, 2-15, 2-19, 2-27, 2-34, 2-35
See also table handler rule
nonconversational 2-24, 2-40, 4-7, A-3
NONE operand value 2-9
See also table handler rule
null value 1-2, 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-26, 2-29, 2-32, 4-4, 4-5, 4-10

### 0

OFFSET operand 2-7
open 1-3, 2-19, 2-20
OPEN CURSOR 2-11, 2-13, 2-14, 2-17, 2-20, 4-2, 4-4
OPTIONS operand 2-7, 2-8, 2-18, 2-21, 2-23
ORDER BY 1-2, 2-5, 2-17, 4-3
OVERRIDE statement 2-2, 2-3, 2-5

### P

page 1-3
PARMS TSO 3-8
PGROUP 3-9
PL/I 2-21, 2-35, 4-10
POSITION operand 2-7
preload rule 2-24, 4-10
primary key audit 2-4, 2-16, 2-20, 2-30, 4-2, 4-3, 4-5
Primary Key Selection 2-10, 2-12, 4-1, 4-2
PSB 1-3, 2-38, 2-40
pseudo segment 2-20, 2-21, 4-10

### Q

qualified name 2-3, 2-5

### R

REDEFINE operand 2-7
relational operator 2-4, 2-5, 2-9,
2-11, 2-16, 2-19, 2-21, 2-30, 4-2, 4-4
Return Codes 2-14, 2-21, 2-28, 2-30,
2-33, 2-36, 2-37, 3-12, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5,
4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 RGLDB2S See rules generator See sample problem RGLGEN Utility 1-1, 3-1, B-2, E-1, F-1 abnormal termination codes 3-12 DBRM 3-6, 3-7, 3-10 DB2 application plan 3-7
DB2 authorization 3-1
DB2 bind process 3-7
DB2 catalog 3-1, 3-2, 3-3, 5-1
Defining IMSADF II Column ID 3-4, 3-5 dependencies description DSNELI 3-6 IADF 3-1, 3-9 input ADFCOLUMNID TABLE DB2 PLAN NAME 3-10 DB2 SUBSYSTEM NAME ID 3-11 ISPF Library 3-10 MEMBER 3-10, 3-11 member name 3-10 NAME 3-10

PGROUP 3-9	rules generator
RGLGENI 3-9	#COLS parameter 2-25
sssTBxx 3-10 SYSID 3-9	ADFSQLHO DD 2-25 ADFSQLHW DD 2-25
table ID 3-10	assembler 2-7, 2-8, 2-21, 2-25
table name 3-10	boundary alignment 2-7, 2-8
Installation 3-6	Column I/O area 2-11
link-edit plan F-1	column operands
DSNELI - TSO language	ID 2-22
interface 5-1, F-1	KEY 2-3, 2-4, 2-5, 2-10, 2-12,
MFC1Y25 E-1, F-1	2-15, 2-22 Length 2-6, 2-22
message error 3-10, 3-11, 3-12	OFFSET 2-7
identification header 3-12	POSITION 2-7
informational 3-11, 3-12	POSITION 2-7 REDEFINE 2-7
warning 3-11, 3-12	SQLISRT 2-4, 2-5, 2-19, 2-20,
message parameters	2-22, 4-9
adfcolumnid 3-13	SQLNAME 1-3, 2-5, 2-22, 2-25,
column.name 3-13 creator 3-13	3-11 SQLNULL 1-2, 2-2, 2-5, 2-12,
ddname 3-13	2-20, 2-21, 2-22
function 3-13	SQLORD 2-5, 2-17, 2-22
invalid.parm 3-13	SQLUPD 2-5, 2-15, 2-19, 2-20,
membername 3-13	2-22
offset 3-13	START 2-7
sqlcode 3-13	TYPE 2-4, 2-6, 2-7, 2-22 COLUMN statement 1-1, 2-1, 2-2, 2-3
sqlwarn 3-13 string 3-13	2-4, 2-5, 2-7, 2-22, 2-25, 3-11
table.id 3-12	composite rule 2-24, 4-10
table.name 3-12	DBRMLIB DD 2-25
message text 3-13	DB2 pre-compiler 2-8, 2-21, 2-25,
MFC1Y25D 3-6, 3-7, 3-10	2-34, 2-36
output 3-11 return codes 3-12	DB2PRINT DD 2-25 DB2TERM DD 2-25
sample problem 5-1	driver link-edits 2-24
Specification Example B-2	DSECT 2-7, 2-8, 2-9
SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID 3-1, 3-4, 3-6,	Execution Procedure 2-24
3-9, 3-10, 3-11	FIELD 1-1
SYSIBM.SYSCOLUMNS 3-1, 3-2 SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES 3-1, 3-3	See also rules generator COLUMN
SYSIBM.SYSKEYS 3-1, 3-3	field statement 2-4 See also rules generator column
Trace Facility E-1	statement
TSO 3-1, 3-7	generate operands
ADFDUMP 3-8	CVALL 2-3
Application Program 3-1	DATACOMP 2-12, 2-13, 2-23, 2-28,
background 3-1, 3-7, 3-8, 3-9,	2-34, 4-8, 4-10 DBPATH 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-23,
3-11, 3-12 commands 3-7, 3-8	2-30, 2-34, 2-37, 4-1, 4-2, 4-4
DB2 attachment 3-1	DLET 2-23
DSN 3-1, 3-8	ISRT 2-23
END 3-9	OPTIONS 2-7, 2-8, 2-18, 2-21,
foreground 3-1, 3-7, 3-8, 3-9,	2-23
3-11, 3-12 IKJEFT01 3-8	SEGMENTS 2-23 Shtable 2-24
JCL 3-7, 3-8	SQLCALL 2-8, 2-9, 2-10, 2-16,
PARMS 3-8	2-22
program parameters 3-7, 3-8	SQLUSER 2-8, 2-9, 2-18, 2-21,
RGLGENI 3-8	2-22, 2-28
RGLGENO 3-8, 3-10, 3-11 RGLGENT 3-8, 3-11	TABLES 2-7, 2-9, 2-18, 2-21 TSEGS 2-23, 2-37
RUN 3-1, 3-8	GENERATE statement 2-1, 2-7, 2-18,
STEPLIB 3-8	2-21, 2-22, 2-23, 2-24
SYSPRINT 3-1, 3-8, 3-11, 3-12	input transaction rule 2-3, 2-23,
SYSTSIN 3-8	2-34, 2-37
terminal monitor program 3-1,	linkage editor 2-8, 2-24
3-12 userid 3-10	MERGE statement 2-5 non-standard SQL statements 2-10,
RGLGENI DD 3-8, 3-9	2-14, 2-15, 2-19, 2-27, 2-34, 2-35
RGLGENO DD 3-8, 3-10, 3-11	Operand Values
RGLGENO DD 3-8, 3-10, 3-11 RGLGENT DD 3-8, 3-11	ASC 2-5, 2-17
ROLL call 4-6, 4-8, 4-9	BIT 2-4
ROW 1-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34,	DESC 2-5, 2-17 FLOAT 2-4, 2-6
2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-23, 2-34, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 4-6, 4-8, 4-9, 4-11	SGALL 2-23

TABH 2-8, 2-18, 2-21	Output
TABL 2-7	Table Handler Rule A-4
TBL 2-1, 2-5, 2-37	Rules Generator Input B-2
VARCHAR 2-6, 2-7	source
OVERRIDE statement 2-2, 2-3, 2-5 preload rule 2-24, 4-10	RGLDB2S - sample problem 5-1 Rules Generator Statements A-1,
segment handler rule 1-1, 2-23,	B-2
2-24, 2-33, 2-37, 4-10	Specification Example
segment layout rule 1-1, 2-23, 2-37	Application Plan B-11
segment statement 1-1, 2-1, 2-3,	Bind Process B-11
2-18	Data Base Request Module -
See also table statement	DBRM B-11
source Appendix A A-1	DSN8.TEMPL Definition B-1 EM transaction B-1, C-1
Appendix B B-2	ES transaction B-1, C-7
RGLDB2S - sample source 5-1	EX transaction B-1
SQLIND 4-4, 4-5	High Level Audit Language B-9
SQLNULL 4-4, 4-5	IADF B-2
SQLUPD 4-4, 4-8	RGLGEN Utility B-2
standard SQL statement 2-23 standard SQL statements 2-10, 2-11,	SAMPTOR B-11 Transaction Help B-8
2-12, 2-13, 2-19, 2-27, 2-30, 2-34,	static rules
2-35, 4-4, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9	DSN8.TEMPL 5-1, A-1, B-1
SYSTEM statement 2-1, 2-25	IMS/VS Transaction - SAMPTOR 5-1
table handler rule 1-1, 2-1, 2-2,	Project/Group - ZZ 5-1
2-3, 2-4, 2-5, 2-7, 2-9, 2-24, 2-25,	RGLDB2S - sample source 5-1
4-5, 4-10 binding 1-3, 2-38, 2-40	RGLGEN Utility 5-1 screen image source 5-1
execution 4-1, 4-2, 4-6	SAMPTOR 5-1, B-11
layout A-4	scratch pad area
naming convention 2-40	See SPA
rules documentation 2-37	secondary key audit 2-20, 2-31, 4-2,
SQLHNDLR 2-34, 2-35, 2-37 summary 2-21, 2-22	4-3, 4-5 SEGMENT 2-1, 2-23, 2-34
USER SQL 2-31, 4-3	See also TABLE
table I/O area 2-2, 2-7, 2-11, 2-21,	segment handler rule 2-23, 2-24, 2-33,
2-31, 2-34, 2-35, 2-36	2-37, 4-10
table layout rule 1-1, 2-2, 2-7,	segment layout rule 2-23, 2-37
2-8, 2-19, 2-23, 2-37 TABLE operands	SEGMENT statement 1-1, 2-1, 2-3, 2-18 See also table statement
ID 2-22	SEGMENTS operand 2-23
SKSEGS 2-3, 2-16, 2-18, 2-22,	SEGUPDTE call 2-28, 2-34
2-30, 2-31, 4-2, 4-3	SELECT 1-1, 2-23, 4-9
SQLDIST 2-1, 2-11, 2-20, 2-22 SQLIND 2-1, 2-2, 2-5, 2-12, 2-20,	cursor 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 4-8 key selection 1-2, 2-16, 2-17, 4-2,
2-21, 2-22	4-3
SQLISRT 2-2, 2-12	rglgen 3-1
SQLNAME 1-3, 2-2, 2-3, 2-22,	rules generator 2-1, 2-4, 2-5, 2-8,
2-25, 3-11	2-10
SQLUPD 2-3 TYPE 2-1, 2-5, 2-22, 2-37	SQLHNDLR 2-34
TABLE statement 1-1, 2-1, 2-2, 2-3,	USER SQL 2-19, 2-20, 2-21 SELECT operand value 2-9, 2-10, 2-14
2-18, 2-20, 2-21, 2-22, 2-25, 4-2	See also table handler rule
TSEGS 4-4	SET clause 1-3, 2-3, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12,
USER SQL statement 1-3, 2-8, 2-9,	2-15, 2-19, 2-20, 4-8
2-10, 2-18, 2-19, 2-20, 2-21, 2-27, 2-30, 2-34, 2-35, 4-3, 4-4	SETERROR audit operation 2-33
RUN DSN subcommand 3-1, 3-8	SETFLAG audit operation 2-28 SGALL operand value 2-23
5011 5011 5011 5011 5011	SHTABLE operand 2-24
	signon/profile
	See sample problem
S	SKSEGS operand 2-3, 2-16, 2-18, 2-22, 2-30, 2-31, 4-2, 4-3
	SMALLINT 2-6, 2-7
sample problem 5-1, A-1, B-1, C-1	sort 1-3, 2-16
DB2 application plan	SPA 1-1, 1-3, 2-7, 2-21, 2-23, 2-30,
data base request module -	2-34, 2-35, 2-36, 4-1, 4-2, 4-4, 4-5,
DBRM 5-2	4-8, 4-10, 4-11 SPASOL 2-20 2-30 2-31 4-5
DB2 bind process 5-2 dynamic rules	SPASQL 2-20, 2-30, 2-31, 4-5 SPASQLCD 2-30, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1
error messages 5-2	SPASQLKS 2-16, 2-30, 4-2, 4-3, 4-5
high level audit language 5-1	SPAWARN 2-30, 2-36, 2-37, 4-1
signon/profile 5-2	SPAWHERE 2-20, 2-31, 4-3, 4-5
transaction help facility 5-1	special processing routine 2-7

```
SQLHNDLR 2-34

USER SQL 2-19, 2-20, 2-21

SET clause 1-3, 2-3, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12,

2-15, 2-19, 2-20, 4-8

static 1-1, 2-8, 4-1, 4-10
binding 2-38
native SQL 1-1, 1-3, 2-21, 2-37,
2-40, 4-11
SQLHNDLR 2-8, 2-10, 2-18, 2-34, 2-35, 2-36, 4-1, 4-10
                                                                                 subselect
arithmetic expressions 1-3, 2-2, 2-3, 2-4, 2-5
                                                                                 TABLE DECLARATION statement 2-21
                                                                                 union 1-4
UPDATE 1-1, 1-3, 2-15, 2-23, 4-4
cursor 2-12, 4-8
authorization statements 1-3
CLOSE 2-19, 2-20
CLOSE CURSOR 2-11, 2-13, 2-14, 2-17,
                                                                                      restrictions
  2-20, 4-1, 4-2, 4-4
                                                                                      rglgen 3-1
                                                                                      rules generator 2-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-8, 2-10
control statements
count 1-3
create 1-2, 3-6
cursor 1-2, 2-10, 2-19, 2-20, 4-8
CURSOR DELETE 2-8, 2-10, 2-13, 4-8
CURSOR SELECT 2-8, 2-10, 2-11, 2-16,
                                                                                      SQLHNDLR 2-34, 2-36
USER SQL 2-19
                                                                                 VALUES clause 1-3, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-19, 2-20, 4-9
                                                                                 WHERE clause 1-1, 2-10, 4-10
CURSOR UPDATE 2-8, 2-10, 2-12, 4-8 data definition 1-3 DECLARE CURSOR 2-11, 2-13, 2-14,
                                                                                      indexes 2-4
                                                                                      key selection 1-3, 2-5, 2-9, 2-16, 2-17, 2-31, 4-2, 4-3 SQLHNDLR 2-35
2-17, 2-20, 4-1, 4-2, 4-4, 4-8

DELETE 1-1, 2-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-8,
2-10, 2-13, 2-15, 2-19, 2-23, 2-34,
                                                                                       Standard functions 2-11, 2-13,
                                                                                      2-14, 2-15
USER SQL 2-
2-21, 2-28
                                                                                                        2-8, 2-18, 2-19, 2-20,
distinct 1-3, 2-1, 2-11, 2-20
dynamic 1-1, 1-3, 4-1, 4-10
execute 3-1
FETCH 2-11, 2-13, 2-14, 2-17, 2-19,
2-20, 2-31, 2-34, 4-1, 6-2
                                                                                 WHERE CURRENT OF CURSOR 2-13, 2-14,
                                                                                   4-8, 4-9
                                                                            SQL communication area 2-28, 2-30,
2-20, 2-31, 2-34, 2-36, 4-1, 4-2,
4-4, 4-5, 4-8
FOR UPDATE OF 2-13, 2-20, 4-8
                                                                           2-35, 2-36, 2-37, 4-6, 4-10
SQLCA parameter 2-36, 4-10
                                                                            SQLCALL functions 2-10, 2-11
FROM_tablename 2-11, 2-13, 2-14,
                                                                                 See also table handler rule
                                                                            SQLCALL operand 2-8, 2-9, 2-10, 2-16,
  2-17
grant 3-1
                                                                             2-22
                                                                           See also table handler rule

SQLCODE 2-28, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37,
3-13, 4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9

SQLDIST operand 2-1, 2-11, 2-20, 2-22

SQLFUNC 2-8, 2-18, 2-19, 2-20, 2-21

SQLHNDLR call 1-1, 2-8, 2-10, 2-12,
2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-18, 2-20, 2-23,
2-34, 2-37, 4-1, 4-7, 4-10

format 2-35
group by 1-4
host variable 2-4, 2-11, 2-16, 2-19, 2-21, 4-3, 4-4, 4-10
     auditor processing 2-28, 2-29,
     2-31, 2-33, 4-5 format 2-20
     naming convention 2-9
     null processing
     SQLHNDLR 2-35
                                                                                 format
                                                                                               2-35
INCLUDE SQLCA 2-35, 2-36
                                                                                       2-37
                                                                                 ID
index 1-2, 2-4, 2-16, 3-6, 4-1

INSERT 1-1, 1-3, 2-1, 2-2, 2-3, 2-4,

2-5, 2-8, 2-12, 2-19, 2-34, 3-1, 4-9

INTO 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-17,
                                                                                 LABEL 2-37
                                                                                 parameters
                                                                                      AREA 2-36, 4-10
FUNC 2-35
KEY 2-35, 4-10
  2-21, 4-10
language usage 1-2

LIKE predicate 2-4, 2-9, 2-11, 2-16,

2-17, 2-18, 2-21, 2-30, 4-2, 4-4

native 1-1, 1-3, 2-21, 2-36, 2-38,

2-40, 4-1, 4-10

open 1-3, 2-19, 2-20
                                                                                      LABEL 4-10
SQLCA 2-36, 4-10
table ID 2-35, 4-10
TLR 2-36
                                                                           SQLIND operand 2-1, 2-2, 2-5, 2-12, 2-20, 2-21, 2-22, 4-4, 4-5
SQLISRT operand 2-2, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-19, 2-20, 2-22, 4-9
OPEN CURSOR 2-11, 2-13, 2-14, 2-17,
  2-20, 4-2, 4-4
order by 1-2, 2-5, 2-17, 4-3 relational operator 2-4, 2-5, 2-9, 2-11, 2-16, 2-19, 2-21, 2-30, 4-2,
                                                                            SQLNAME operand 1-3, 2-2, 2-3, 2-5,
                                                                             2-22, 2-25, 3-11
                                                                           SQLNULL operand 1-2, 2-2, 2-5, 2-12, 2-20, 2-21, 2-22, 4-4, 4-5
  4-4
                                                                           SQLORD operand 2-5, 2-17, 2-22
SQLUPD operand 2-3, 2-5, 2-15, 2-19,
2-20, 2-22, 4-4, 4-8
Return Codes 2-14, 2-33, 2-36, 2-37,
4-1, 4-3, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9
SELECT 1-1, 2-23, 4-9
                                                                           SQLUSER operand 2-8, 2-9, 2-18, 2-21, 2-22, 2-28
     cursor 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14,
                                                                           See also table handler rule
SQLWARN 2-28, 2-29, 2-30, 2-33, 2-36,
2-37, 3-13, 4-1, 4-5, 4-6, 4-9
     key selection 1-2, 2-16, 2-17,
       4-2, 4-3
      rglgen 3-1
     rules generator 2-1, 2-4, 2-5, 2-8, 2-10
                                                                            ssssTBxx 3-10
                                                                            standard processing 2-4, 2-8, 2-10
```

standard SQL statements 2-10, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-19, 2-23, 2-27, 2-30, 2-34, 2-35, 4-4, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9
 See also table handler rule standard TWIN processing 1-4, 4-4
START operand 2-7
static rules 5-1
static SQL 1-1, 2-8, 4-1, 4-10
STEPLIB DD 3-8
subselect 1-4
SUBSTR audit operation 2-27, 4-5
SYSADF.ADFCOLUMNID 3-1, 3-4, 3-6, 3-9, 3-10, 3-11
SYSIBM.SYSCOLUMNS 3-1, 3-2
SYSIBM.SYSKDEXES 3-1, 3-3
SYSIBM.SYSKEYS 3-1, 3-3
SYSID 2-25, 3-9
SYSPRINT DD 3-1, 3-8, 3-11, 3-12
SYSTEM statement 2-1, 2-25
SYSTSIN DD 3-8

# T

TABH operand value 2-8, 2-18, 2-21 TABL operand value 2-7 TABLE 1-1, 1-4, 2-1, 2-2, 2-3, 2-7, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-20, 2-21, 2-23, 2-33, 2-35, 3-1, 3-6, 3-10, 4-4, 4-8, B-1 table handler rule 1-1, 2-24, 2-25, 4-5, 4-10 binding 1-3, 2-38, 2-40 execution 4-1, 4-2, 4-6 Key column 2-9, 2-14, 2-15, 2-16, 2-17, 2-20, 2-21, 2-28, 2-30, 2-31 layout A-4 naming convention 2-40 non-standard SQL statements 2-10, 2-14, 2-15, 2-19, 2-27, 2-34, 2-35 rules documentation 2-37 rules generator 2-1, 2-2, 2-3, 2-4, 2-5, 2-7, 2-9 rules generator operands OPTIONS 2-8, 2-18, 2-21 SQLCALL 2-8, 2-9, 2-10, 2-16, 2-22 SQLUSER 2-8, 2-9, 2-18, 2-21, 2-22, 2-28 2-8, 2-9, 2-18, 2-21 TABLES SQL functions CURSOR DELETE 2-8, 2-10, 2-13, CURSOR SELECT 2-8, 2-10, 2-11, CURSOR UPDATE 2-8, 2-10, 2-12, DELETE 2-8, 2-15 INSERT 2-8, 2-12, 4-9
SELECT 2-8, 2-14, 2-20
UPDATE 2-8, 2-15 SQLCALL functions 2-9, 2-10, 2-11 SQLCALL operand CDELETE 2-9, 2-10, 2-13, 2-23, 4-7, 4-9 CSELÉCT 2-9, 2-10, 2-11, 2-20, 4-1, 4-4 CUPDATE 2-9, 2-10, 2-12, 2-23, DELETE 2-9, 2-10, 2-15 DSQLCALL 2-9 INSERT 2-9, 2-10, 2-12, 4-7

KSELECTn 2-16, 2-19, 2-20, 2-30, 2-31 KSELECT1 2-9, 2-10, 2-16, 2-17, 2-30 KSELECT2 2-9, 2-10, 2-16, 2-17, 2-30 NONE 2-9 SELECT 2-9, 2-10, 2-14 UPDATE 2-9, 2-10, 2-15 SQLHNDLR 2-34, 2-35, 2-37 standard SQL statements 2-10, 2-11, 2-12, 2-13, 2-19, 2-23, 2-27, 2-30, 2-34, 2-35, 4-4, 4-7, 4-8, 4-9 summary 2-21, 2-22 USER SQL 2-31, 4-3 USER SQL statement 2-10, 2-18, 2-19, 2-21, 2-27, 4-3, 4-4
&SQLENDS 2-8, 2-18, 2-21
LABEL 2-8, 2-18, 2-20, 2-21 SQLFUNC 2-8, 2-18, 2-19, 2-20, 2-21 WHERE clause 2-8, 2-18, 2-19, 2-20, 2-21 table I/O area 2-2, 2-7, 2-11, 2-21, 2-31, 2-34, 2-35, 2-36 table layout rule 1-1, 2-2, 2-7, 2-8 2-19, 2-23, 2-37 table name 2-9 1-1, 2-2, 2-7, 2-8, correlation name 2-3 join 1-3, 2-3 qualified name 2-3 unqualified name 2-2, 2-3 unqualified name 2-2, 2-3
table space 1-3
TABLE statement 1-1, 2-1, 2-2, 2-3, 2-18, 2-20, 2-21, 2-22, 2-25, 4-2
TABLES operand 2-7, 2-9, 2-18, 2-21
TBL operand value 2-1, 2-5, 2-37
text utility 1-2, 1-4
TLR parameter 2-36
trace facility 3-8, E-1
truncated 2-2, 2-29, 2-32, 4-5, 4-6, 4-9 4-9 TSEGS operand 2 TSO 2-38, 2-40 2-23, 2-37, 4-4 See also RGLGEN Utility TSO language interface - DSNELI See RGLGEN Utility TYPE operand 2-1, 2-4, 2-5, 2-6, 2-7, 2-22, 2-37

## U

UNION 1-4
unqualified name 2-2, 2-3, 2-5
UPDATE 1-1, 1-3, 2-15, 2-23, 4-4
cursor 2-12, 4-8
restrictions 2-5
rglgen 3-1
rules generator 2-1, 2-3, 2-4, 2-8,
2-10
SQLHNDLR 2-34, 2-36
USER SQL 2-19
UPDATE operand value 2-9, 2-10, 2-15
See also table handler rule
USER SQL - key selection browse 2-30
USER SQL statement 1-3, 2-8, 2-9, 2-10,
2-18, 2-19, 2-20, 2-21, 2-27, 2-30,
2-34, 2-35, 4-3, 4-4
See also rules generator
See also table handler rule
Userid TSO 3-10

٧

VALUES clause 1-3, 2-4, 2-5, 2-12, 2-19, 2-20, 4-9

VARCHAR 1-2, 2-6, 2-7, 2-26, 4-4, 4-5, 4-11

VARLIST 2-33

VARLIST1 2-33

VARLIST6 2-30, 2-33, 4-6

VARLIST7 2-30, 2-33, 4-6

VIEW 1-1, 2-1, 2-2, 2-3, 2-7, 2-12, 2-15, 2-16, 2-35, 3-10, 4-8

See also TABLE

View name 2-9

W

Warning messages 2-30, 3-11, 3-12, 4-6
WHERE clause 1-1, 2-10, 4-10
indexes 2-4
key selection 1-3, 2-5, 2-9, 2-16,
2-17, 2-31, 4-2, 4-3
SQLHNDLR 2-35
Standard functions 2-11, 2-13, 2-14,
2-15
USER SQL 2-8, 2-18, 2-19, 2-20,
2-21, 2-28
WHERE CURRENT OF CURSOR 2-13, 2-14,
4-8, 4-9

Note:

You may use this form to communicate your comments about this publication, its organization, or subject matter, with the understanding that IBM may use or distribute whatever information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Your comments will be sent to the author's department for whatever review and action, if any, are deemed appropriate.

Note: Copies of IBM publications are not stocked at the location to which this form is addressed. Please direct any requests for copies of publications, or for assistance in using your IBM system, to your IBM representative or to the IBM branch office serving your locality.

Possible topics for comment are:

Clarity	Accuracy	Completeness	Organization	Coding	Retrieval	Legibility
If you wi	sh a reply, give	your name, compar	ny, mailing address	s, and date:		

What is your occupation?	
Number of latest Newsletter associated with this publication:	

Thank you for your cooperation. No postage stamp necessary if mailed in the U.S.A. (Elsewhere, an IBM office or representative will be happy to forward your comments or you may mail directly to the address in the Edition Notice on the back of the title page.)

IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 DATABASE 2 Application Specification Guide

SH20-6603-01

-- Cut or Fold Along Line -

### Reader's Comment Form

Fold and tape

Please Do Not Staple

Fold and tape

**BUSINESS REPLY MAIL** 

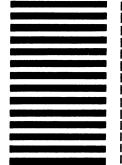
FIRST CLASS

PERMIT NO. 40

ARMONK, N.Y.

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE:

International Business Machines Corporation Department 8D8 220 Las Colinas Boulevard Irving, Texas 75039-5513 NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED
IN THE
UNITED STATES



Fold and tape Please Do Not Staple Fold and tape



Note:

You may use this form to communicate your comments about this publication, its organization, or subject matter, with the understanding that IBM may use or distribute whatever information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Your comments will be sent to the author's department for whatever review and action, if any, are deemed appropriate.

Note: Copies of IBM publications are not stocked at the location to which this form is addressed. Please direct any requests for copies of publications, or for assistance in using your IBM system, to your IBM representative or to the IBM branch office serving your locality.

Possible topics for comment are:

Clarity	Accuracy	Completeness	Organization	Coding	Retrieval	Legibility
If you wis	h a reply, give	your name, compa	ny, mailing address	s, and date:		
				······································		
			-			

What is your occupation?	
Number of latest Newsletter associated with this publication:	

Thank you for your cooperation. No postage stamp necessary if mailed in the U.S.A. (Elsewhere, an IBM office or representative will be happy to forward your comments or you may mail directly to the address in the Edition Notice on the back of the title page.)

IMS Application Development Facility II Version 2 Release 2 DATABASE 2 Application Specification Guide

-- Cut or Fold Along Line ----

### Reader's Comment Form

Fold and tape

Please Do Not Staple

Fold and tape



**BUSINESS REPLY MAIL** 

FIRST CLASS

PERMIT NO. 40

ARMONK, N.Y.

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE:

International Business Machines Corporation Department 8D8 220 Las Colinas Boulevard Irving, Texas 75039-5513 NO POSTAGE NECESSARY IF MAILED IN THE UNITED STATES



Fold and tape

Please Do Not Staple

Fold and tape



Publication Number SH20-6603-01	File Number S/370/4300-32
	Program Number 5665-348



